

SCHAUM'S
ouTlines

LATIN GRAMMAR

ALAN FISHBONE

—
The essential tools for reading Classical Latin!

—
113 practice exercises to hone skills

—
Accompanies any textbook

—
Glossary of Latin words

MORE THAN
30 MILLION
SCHAUM'S
OUTLINES
SOLD

Use with these courses: Introduction to Latin Latin Advanced Latin
 Latin Translation Independent Studies in Latin

SCHAUM'S
OUTLINE OF
[LATIN](#)
[GRAMMAR](#)

Alan Fishbone

SCHAUM'S OUTLINE SERIES

McGRAW-HILL

New York Chicago San Francisco Lisbon

London Madrid Mexico City Milan New Delhi

San Juan Seoul Singapore Sydney Toronto

McGraw-Hill
A Division of The McGraw-Hill Companies 

ebook_copyright.qxd 10/1/02 9:35 AM Page 1

Copyright © 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Manufactured in the United States of America.

Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

0-07-141540-8

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: 0-07-136455-2.

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps.

McGraw-Hill eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. For more information, please contact George Hoare, Special Sales, at george_hoare@mcgraw-hill.com or (212) 904-4069.

TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. ("McGraw-Hill") and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill's prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS". McGRAW-HILL AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED

FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE

WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR

IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS

FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

[DOI: 10.1036/0071415408](https://doi.org/10.1036/0071415408)



DOI Page 8.5x11 10/1/02 11:39 AM Page 1

Want to learn more?

We hope you enjoy this McGraw-Hill eBook! If you'd like more information about this book, its author, or related books

[and websites, please click here.](#)

In Memoria

Mattaei Spinelli

This page intentionally left blank.

[For more information about this book, click here.](#)

CONTENTS

[Preface](#)

[xi](#)

[Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and](#)

[Pronunciation](#)

[xiii](#)

[Alphabet](#)

[xiii](#)

[Consonants](#)

[xiii](#)

[Vowels](#)

[xiv](#)

[Diphthongs](#)

[xiv](#)

[Pronunciation of Latin Words](#)

[xiv](#)

[CHAPTER 1](#)

[The Noun](#)

[1](#)

[The Nominative Case](#)

[2](#)

[The Genitive Case](#)

[2](#)

[The Dative Case](#)

[3](#)

[The Accusative Case](#)

[3](#)

[The Ablative Case](#)

[3](#)

[The Vocative Case](#)

[4](#)

[Declension](#)

[4](#)

[The First Declension](#)

[4](#)

[The Second Declension](#)

[7](#)

[The Third Declension](#)

[9](#)

[The Fourth Declension](#)

[12](#)

[The Fifth Declension](#)

[13](#)

[A Few Irregular Nouns](#)

[14](#)

[CHAPTER 2](#)

[The Adjective](#)

[17](#)

[First-Second-Declension Adjectives](#)

[17](#)

[Third-Declension Adjectives](#)

[19](#)

[Three-Termination Adjectives](#)

[19](#)

[Two-Termination Adjectives](#)

[20](#)

[One-Termination Adjectives](#)

[21](#)

[Adjectives with the Genitive Singular in -ōús](#)

[23](#)

v

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

vi

Contents

[Comparison of Adjectives](#)

[24](#)

[The Comparative Degree](#)

[24](#)

[The Superlative Degree](#)

[25](#)

CHAPTER 3

Pronouns and Adjectives

27

Personal Pronouns

27

Relexive Pronouns

28

Possessive Adjectives

28

Demonstratives

29

Relatives

31

Interrogatives

31

Indefinites

32

CHAPTER 4

The Verb

35

Person and Number

35

Voice

35

Mood

36

Indicative

36

Subjunctive

36

[Imperative](#)

36

[Tense](#)

36

[Conjugations](#)

37

[Present System](#)

38

[Present Indicative Active](#)

39

[Present Indicative Passive](#)

39

[Imperfect Indicative Active](#)

41

[Imperfect Indicative Passive](#)

42

[Future Indicative Active](#)

43

[Future Indicative Passive](#)

44

[Present Subjunctive Active](#)

45

[Present Subjunctive Passive](#)

46

[Imperfect Subjunctive Active](#)

47

[Imperfect Subjunctive Passive](#)

47

[Present Imperative Active](#)

48

[Present Imperative Passive](#)

48

[Future Imperative Active](#)

49

[Perfect System](#)

52

[Perfect Active System](#)

52

[Perfect Passive System](#)

54

[Verbal Nouns](#)

59

[In@nitives](#)

59

[Supine](#)

60

[Gerund](#)

60

[Participles](#)

61

[Present Active Participle](#)

61

Contents

vii

[Perfect Passive Participle](#)

62

[Future Active Participle](#)

62

[Future Passive Participle](#)

62

[Periphrastics](#)

62

[Deponent Verbs](#)

63

[Participles](#)

64

[Imperfect Subjunctive](#)

65

[Semi-Deponent Verbs](#)

66

[Impersonal Verbs](#)

66

[Some Irregular Verbs](#)

67

[Present Participle](#)

68

[Present Indicative](#)

68

[Imperfect Indicative](#)

68

[Future Indicative](#)

68

[Present Subjunctive](#)

69

[Present Participle](#)

69

[Present Indicative](#)

69

[Imperative](#)

69

CHAPTER 5

Adverbs and Prepositions

73

Adverbs

73

Prepositions

74

Common Prepositions with the Accusative Case

75

Common Prepositions with the Ablative Case

76

Prepositions That Take Both Accusative and Ablative Cases

76

CHAPTER 6

Syntax of the Noun

79

Nominative Case

79

Subject

79

Predicate Nominative

79

Genitive Case

80

Possessive Genitive

80

Partitive Genitive

80

Objective Genitive

80

[Subjective Genitive](#)

81

[Genitive of Characteristic, or Predicate Genitive](#)

81

[Genitive of Description](#)

81

[Genitive of Indefinite Value](#)

81

[Genitive with Certain Verbs](#)

82

[Dative Case](#)

84

[Indirect Object](#)

84

[Dative of the Possessor](#)

85

[Predicate Dative](#)

85

[Dative with Compound Verbs](#)

85

[Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs](#)

86

[Dative of Agent](#)

86

viii

Contents

[Accusative Case](#)

88

[Direct Object](#)

88

[Subject Accusative of an In@nitive](#)

88

[Accusative of Extent of Time or Space](#)

88

[Adverbial Accusative](#)

88

[Accusative of Place to Which](#)

88

[Accusative with Prepositions](#)

89

[Accusative of Exclamation](#)

89

[Ablative Case](#)

91

[Ablative of Place from Which \(from\)](#)

91

[Ablative of Place Where \(in\)](#)

92

[Ablative of Time When or within Which \(in\)](#)

92

[Ablative of Means or Instrument \(by\)](#)

92

[Ablative of Cause \(from\)](#)

92

[Ablative of Personal Agent \(by\)](#)

92

[Ablative of Manner \(with\)](#)

93

[Ablative of Separation \(from\)](#)

93

[Ablative of Comparison \(from\)](#)

93

[Ablative of Degree of Difference \(by\)](#)

93

[Ablative of Description \(with\)](#)

93

[Ablative of Respect](#)

94

[Ablative Absolute](#)

94

[Ablative with Prepositions](#)

94

[Locative Case](#)

97

[CHAPTER 7](#)

[Syntax of the Adjective](#)

99

[Predicate Adjective](#)

99

[Substantive Adjective](#)

100

[Adverbial Use of the Adjective](#)

100

[Comparative and Superlative Adjectives](#)

100

[CHAPTER 8](#)

[Syntax of the Simple Sentence](#)

105

[Indicative Mood](#)

106

[Imperative Mood](#)

[110](#)

[Negative Commands](#)

[111](#)

[Subjunctive Mood: Independent Uses](#)

[113](#)

[Potential](#)

[113](#)

[Deliberative](#)

[113](#)

[Optative](#)

[113](#)

[Hortatory or Jussive](#)

[114](#)

[Participles](#)

[117](#)

[Relative Clauses](#)

[119](#)

Contents

ix

[CHAPTER 9](#)

[Syntax of the Complex Sentence](#)

[121](#)

[Sequence of Tenses](#)

[122](#)

[Relative Time](#)

[122](#)

[Temporal Clauses](#)

[123](#)

[Causal Clauses](#)

[124](#)

[Concessive Clauses](#)

[125](#)

[Purpose Clauses](#)

[128](#)

[Indirect Commands](#)

[129](#)

[Result Clauses](#)

[129](#)

[Fear Clauses](#)

[130](#)

[Clauses of Prevention](#)

[130](#)

[Clauses of Doubting](#)

[130](#)

[Clauses of Proviso](#)

[131](#)

[Conditional Sentences](#)

[135](#)

[Simple Conditions](#)

[135](#)

[Future Conditions](#)

[135](#)

[Contrary-to-Fact Conditions](#)

[136](#)

[Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive](#)

[140](#)

[Relative Clause of Characteristic](#)

[140](#)

[Relative Clause of Purpose](#)

[140](#)

[Relative Clause of Result](#)

[141](#)

[Relative Clause of Cause](#)

[141](#)

[Participles Revisited](#)

[144](#)

[Ablative Absolute](#)

[145](#)

[Indirect Statement](#)

[148](#)

[Indirect Question](#)

[153](#)

[Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement](#)

[158](#)

[Relative Clauses in Indirect Statement](#)

[159](#)

[Conditional Sentences in Indirect Statement](#)

[162](#)

["Fore ut" Clause](#)

[165](#)

[Impersonal Verbs](#)

[167](#)

[Verbs of Emotional Distress](#)

[167](#)

[Verbs and Expressions of Permission and Necessity](#)

[168](#)

[Verbs of Interest](#)

[168](#)

[The Infinitive](#)

[171](#)

[Gerund and Gerundive](#)

[172](#)

[Supine](#)

[173](#)

[ANSWERS TO EXERCISES](#)

[177](#)

[INDEX](#)

[197](#)

This page intentionally left blank.

PREFACE

Schaum's Outline of Latin Grammar is a supplemental reference grammar for students who wish to review or strengthen their grasp of the fundamentals of Latin morphology and syntax. It may be used alongside any course or other material. It follows the basic structure of traditional Latin reference grammars, falling into two parts.

The first presents Latin's extensive morphology in as systematic a manner as possible, with explanations of how the forms of Latin words are generated. Although these forms are many and there is really no particularly easy way around memorizing them, it is hoped that the organization and regularity of their systems will speak for itself. Indeed, that organization and regularity have always been one of the fascinating beauties of Latin, despite the labor of memorization, which can sometimes obscure this from the student's view. To help students through that labor, the book contains numerous exercises, both of recognition and of form generation.

The second part deals with the basic elements of Latin syntax, increasing in complexity from noun cases to the subordination of conditional sentences in indirect statement. They are illustrated with two separate sets of exercises, the first written in a deliberately simplified vocabulary and style that seeks only to exhibit the functioning of the syntax in question. The sentences in these exercises make no other pretensions of any kind. Following them, however, are sentences drawn from classical Latin prose that also exhibit the syntax in question. These sentences are much better examples of Latin in action, but also much more difficult, and so I have included extensive vocabulary glossaries to enable students to focus on them without the tedious distraction of slogging through the dictionary. I believe that it is through these real Latin sentences that students will progress from beginning levels of competence to the ability to read classical Latin authors. In the back, students will find answers to all exercise questions and translations of all Latin.

The book is by no means exhaustive. Some things have been left out or passed over in the hope of being concise or at least not overwhelming in detail. Vocabulary, for example, has not been treated at all; likewise, some more abstruse applications of the subjunctive have been omitted. The book is, after all, an 'outline.' Ideally, students will be able to consult it on specific matters they encounter elsewhere, read the explanations, and practice understanding them through exercises.

I am deeply indebted to my teachers Floyd Moreland and Stephanie Russell of the Latin-Greek Institute. My thanks go to Rita Fleischer of the same for her help in the realization of this project.

ALAN FISHBONE

xi

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

This page intentionally left blank.

Introduction to the
Latin Alphabet and
Pronunciation
Alphabet

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English but without the letters j and w. For the most part it can be read in the same way, but a few differences must be noted.

CONSONANTS

c

is always pronounced hard, as in cat, never soft like an s.

g

is always pronounced hard, as in god, never soft like a j.

h

is always pronounced, as in hot, never left silent.

i

sometimes acts as a consonant before a vowel and is pronounced as the letter y in English.

v

is always pronounced as the letter w in English.

qu is always pronounced as one consonant, sounding, as in English, like kw.

The other consonant letters are pronounced as in English.

xiii

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

xiv

Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation VOWELS

Vowels in Latin are said to be either long or short, depending on the time taken to pronounce them within a given word.

Long vowels will be marked in this text with a horizontal bar above them. This mark is known as a macron.

There are differences of pronunciation between the long and short versions of the same vowels:

a[̄]

(as in odd)

a

(as in hot)

e

(as in hate)

e

(as in pet)

o

(as in feet)

i

(as in in)

o

(as in bone)

o

(as in ought)

u

(as in moon)

u

(as in put)

DIPHTHONGS

Two vowels pronounced together as one sound make a diphthong.

There are six diphthongs in Latin:

ae (as in my)

au (as in cow)

ei

(as in pay)

eu (as read)

oe (as in boy)

ui (as in win)

As vowel sounds, diphthongs are long.

Pronunciation of Latin Words

The accentuation of a Latin word is determined by its second-to-last or penultimate syllable.²

1 This diphthong appears mostly in Greek words that have been assimilated into Latin, e.g., *TheŒseus*.

2 This rule is sometimes referred to as the law of the penult, this term being shorthand for the penultimate syllable of a word.

Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation xv

If this syllable is long, then it must be stressed, that is, it receives the accentuation when the word is pronounced. If this syllable is short, the syllable immediately before it is accentuated. (A two-syllable word will always be stressed on the first syllable.)

How is a syllable long? A syllable is long if it has a long vowel or a diphthong, or if the vowel of the syllable is followed by two or more consonants. Otherwise it is short.

Œnsula

The second-to-last syllable, *-sul-*, is short. The vowel *u* is short, not a diphthong, and followed by only one consonant. Therefore the syllable before it, *Œn-*, is accented in pronunciation.

impleŒvi

The second syllable *-leŒ-* is long because it contains a long vowel. Therefore it is accented in pronunciation.

Practice reading aloud the following words. Remember to consider whether the penultimate syllable is long or short.

1. *mŒserat*

2. *animaŒlia*

3. *inter*

4. *nostroŒs*

5. *animoŒs*

6. *urbibus*

7. *ambulaŒmus*

8. *salve*

9. *iustitia*

10. *sanguinis*

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 1

The Noun

A noun is a word that denotes a person, place, or thing—for example, pig.

Every instance of a Latin noun has the three grammatical properties of number, gender, and case.

Number: Like English nouns, Latin nouns are singular or plural. This difference is shown by a change in the word's form.

e.g., mouse

mice

muŕs

muŕeŕs

pig

pigs

porcus

porcŕs

Gender: English nouns do not show gender. Latin has three genders—masculine, feminine, and neuter—but usually any given noun will have only one.

While nouns denoting male or female persons often show the expected gender, these genders do not necessarily correspond to the noun's meaning.

e.g., feŕmina, woman, is feminine

vir, man, is masculine

saxum, rock, is neuter

but

servituŕs, slavery, is feminine

liber, book, is masculine

forum, forum, is neuter

Case is the means by which a noun shows its meaning in a sentence. English sentences create meaning through word order. A noun shows its grammatical function by its position in the sentence or from its combination with other words such as prepositions. For example:

The pig bites the dog.

In this sentence, the pig is the subject and the dog the direct object.

The dog bites the pig.

1

1

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

2

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Here the relationship has been reversed; the dog is the subject and the pig the direct object.

However, although their grammatical functions in the two sentences are different, the nouns pig and dog do not change their form to reflect such differences in meaning.

Latin nouns show these different kinds of meaning by changing their form, and the possible forms they can take are called cases.

Such a change in form to express meaning is called inflection, and Latin is an inflected language.

Latin has six cases. This is to say that there are six basic categories of meaning for nouns in sentences. They show these cases through their endings.

(The explanations that follow are merely a preliminary introduction. The cases will be treated more thoroughly in the sections on noun syntax.) The Nominative Case

A noun takes the nominative case when it is the subject of a sentence: The dog bites the pig.

If this sentence were translated into Latin, the noun dog would take the nominative case.

A noun also takes the nominative case when it is the predicate of a sentence. A predicate is a word linked to the subject in a kind of grammatical equation.

Wine is honey.

The verb acts as an equals sign, saying essentially X = Y, where X is the subject and Y is the predicate.

If this sentence were translated into Latin, the noun wine would take the nominative case because it is the subject (X), and honey would take the nominative because it is the predicate (Y).

The Genitive Case

This case does much the same work as the English preposition of.

The milk of goats is good.

Translated into Latin, the noun goats would take the genitive case. This case includes the meaning of the preposition of, so this word would not be translated.

The genitive case also shows possession. For example: the man's house

The possessive noun man's in Latin would take the genitive case.

The English form man's itself shows inflection through the ending 's. You could say that the form man's is the genitive case of the English noun man.

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

3

The Dative Case

This case does much the same work as the English prepositions to and for. It expresses the person(s) or, less usually, the thing(s) affected by the sentence or some part of it:

The milk of goats is good for children.

Translated into Latin, for children would be expressed by the word children in the dative case. The preposition would not be translated since the meaning for is included in the dative case.

The dative case expresses the indirect object of a sentence.

I gave the money to Erskine.

In Latin Erskine would take the dative case.

The Accusative Case

The accusative case expresses the direct object of a sentence.

The pig bites the dog.

Porcus canem mordet.

Since it is the direct object, the noun dog takes the accusative case, canem. Pig takes the nominative case, porcus, since it is the subject.

The dog bites the pig.

Canis porcum mordet.

In this sentence it is the dog which takes the nominative case, canis, since it is the subject, and the pig, as the direct object, which takes the accusative case, porcum.

This grammatical relationship is visibly expressed through case. Therefore it is not the word order that tells you the meaning of the sentence but the endings of the words.

The accusative case is also governed by certain prepositions, particularly those with a sense of (motion) toward or against.

Against the heathens.

Into the sea

In Latin, heathens and sea will take the accusative case. (See Chapter 5.) The Ablative Case

This case does the work of the English prepositions from=with=in=by.

With malice

In agony

Hit by a car

1 To in the sense of "He seems nice to me" but not in the sense of "Go to Paris."

All these nouns in Latin will take the ablative case.

This case has many uses, some of which will require prepositions and some of which will not. These will be presented more fully in Chapters 5 and 6.

The Vocative Case

This case is used only for direct address.

Son, put down that hammer.

Son would take the vocative case.

Latin also retains the vestiges of another case, the locative, used, as its name suggests, to express location. It is found only for nouns denoting the names of cities, towns, islands, and for the expressions `at home" and `in the country.'

As stated before, these are merely introductory descriptions. Case usages will be explained in the sections dealing with noun syntax.

Exercise

1. Identify which case each noun in the following sentence would take in Latin.

Mom, I gave the goat's milk to Douglas with my own hands.

1. Mom

2. I

3. goat's

4. milk

5. Douglas

6. hands

Declension

A declension is a system of endings used to express the different cases described above.

There are five different declensions of Latin nouns, though any given noun belongs to only one.

THE FIRST DECLENSION

Here are some sample nouns of the first declension:

puella, puellae, f.

girl

agricola, agricolae, m.

farmer

meÅnsa, meÅnsae, f.

table

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

5

Given above (in order) are the nominative singular, the genitive singular, the gender, and the meaning. This is the standard format found in dictionaries and textbooks.

The genitive form tells you what declension a noun belongs to and provides the stem for generating all the other case forms. As stated above, a declension is a system of endings for a noun to express case.

All 1st-declension nouns have the ending -ae in the genitive singular. The endings for the rest of the declension are as follows: Singular

Plural

Nominative

-a

-ae

Genitive

-ae

-arum

Dative

-ae

-as

Accusative

-am

-as

Ablative

-a

-as

Vocative

-a

-ae

To decline a noun of the 1st declension, that is, to generate all of its possible case forms, these endings are added to the noun's stem. The stem is obtained by removing the ending -ae from the noun's genitive singular form.

For the noun *agricola*, *agricolae*, m., therefore, the stem is *agricol-*. It declines as follows:

Singular

Translation

Nominative=vocative

agricola

a farmer (subject)

Genitive

agricolae

of a farmer, a farmer's

Dative

agricolae

to=for a farmer

Accusative

agricolam

a farmer (direct object)

Ablative

agricola

from=with=in=by a farmer

Plural

Translation

Nominative=vocative

agricolae

farmers (subject)

Genitive

agricolorum

of farmers, farmers'

Dative

agricolis

to=for farmers

Accusative

agricolās

farmers (direct object)

Ablative

agricolōs

from=with=in=by farmers

Nouns of the 1st declension are predominantly feminine. The exceptions are those nouns that denote masculine agents. There are no neuter nouns in the 1st declension.

2 With the exception of certain second-declension nouns, the nominative and vocative cases are identical and will be listed together. The locative singular for the 1st declension ends in -ae; the plural ends in -ōs: Romae, at Rome; Athenās, at Athens.

6

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Some more sample 1st-declension nouns:

aqua, aquae, f.

water

poeta, poetae, m.

poet

terra, terrae, f.

land

filia, filiae, f.

daughter

luna, lunae, f.

moon

nauta, nautae, m.

sailor

luxuria, luxuriae, f.

luxury

femina, feminae, f.

woman

amicitia, amicitiae, f.

friendship

pecuñia, pecuñiae, f.

money

avaritia, avaritiae, f.

avarice

insula, insulae, f.

island

Exercises

2. Fully decline the noun aqua, aquae, f.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

3. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. puellam

2. mensae

3. poeta

4. terra

5. aquae

6. feminae

7. terram

8. pecunia

4. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. puellae

2. terras

3. poetas

4. aquarum

5. mensas

6. terrae

7. insularum _____

8. luanae

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

THE SECOND DECLENSION

All second-declension nouns have the ending *-i* in the genitive singular.

Here are some sample second-declension nouns:

ventus, venti, m.

wind

vir, viri, m.

man

bellum, belli, n.

war

regnum, regni, n.

kingdom

puer, pueri, m.

boy

amicus, amici, m.

friend

gladius, gladii, m.

sword

numerus, numeri, m.

number

gaudium, gaudii, n.

joy

liber, libri, m.

book

servus, servi, m.

slave

saxum, saxi, n.

rock

As you can see, there is considerable variety of form in the nominative singular of the second declension. It is for this reason that the genitive singular form of a noun serves both to define its declension and to provide the stem for its forms.

The stem for all Latin nouns, regardless of declension, is obtained by removing the ending from the genitive singular form. For example: Noun

Stem

ventus, ventō, m.

vent-

vir, virō, m.

vir-

bellum, bellō, n.

bell-

filius, filiō, m.

fili-

The second declension declines as follows:

Singular

Nom.

ventus

vir

bellum

filius

Gen.

ventō

virō

bellō

filiō

Dat.

vento

virō

bello

filiō

Acc.

ventum

virum

bellum

fōĀlium

Abl.

ventoĀ

viroĀ

belloĀ

fōĀlioĀ

Voc.

vente

vir

bellum

fōĀlōĀ

Plural

Nom.=voc.

ventōĀ

virōĀ

bella

fōĀliōĀ

Gen.

ventoĀrum

viroĀrum

belloĀrum

fōĀlioĀrum

Dat.

ventōĀs

vōĀrōĀs

bellōĀs

fōĀliōĀs

Acc.

ventoĀs

viroŃs

bella

fŃoŃlioŃs

Abl.

ventŃŃs

virŃŃs

bellŃŃs

fŃoŃliŃŃs

8

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Note: Second-declension nouns in -us and -ius are the only Latin nouns whose vocative is different from the nominative.³

For all declensions, the nominative and accusative forms of neuter nouns are identical.

Nouns of the second declension are predominantly masculine and neuter.

Exercises

5. Fully decline the following nouns:

1. saxum, saxŃŃ, n.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

2. puer, puerō, m.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

3. amō, amō, m.

Singular

Plural

Nominative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

Vocative

6. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. regnum

2. gladiō

3. viro

3 The locative singular ends in -ō, the plural in ōs: Tarentō, at Tarentum; Delphōs, at Delphi.

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

9

4. liber

5. numerum _____

6. gaudium

7. puer

8. regnō

7. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. viroŕum

2. gladioŕs

3. bella

4. ventōŕ

5. amōŕcōŕs

6. virōŕ

7. numeroŕs

8. regnoŕum _____

THE THIRD DECLENSION

Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular ending -is.

There are two varieties of third-declension noun, i-stem and non±i-stem, with only minor differences between them. The difference amounts to the appearance of an i at certain points of the i-stem declension where it does not appear in the non±

i-stem declension.

Here are some sample third-declension nouns:

mōŕles, mōŕlitis, m.

soldier

sōŕdus, sōŕderis, n.

star

ratioŕ, ratioŕnis, f.

reasoning

voŕx, voŕcis, f.

voice, word

rex, regis, m.

king

dolor, doloris, m.

pain

nex, necis, f.

murder

umen, uminis, m.

river

tempus, temporis, n.

time

corpus, corporis, n.

body

voluptas, voluptatis, f.

pleasure

amor, amoris, m.

love

eques, equitis, m.

horseman, knight

As you can see, the third declension has nouns of every gender.

There is great variety in the nominative singular, but all genitive singulars end in -is. The stem is obtained by removing this ending -is from the genitive singular form.

10

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

Noun

Stem

miles, militis, m.

milit-

nex, necis, f.

nec-

ratio, ratio, f.

ratio-

adus, aderis, n.

ader-

They decline as follows:

Singular

Nom.=voc.

adus

nex

ratio

adus

Gen.

aditis

necis

rationis

aderis

Dat.

adit

nec

ratione

ader

Acc.

aditem

necem

rationem

adus

Abl.

adite

nece

ratione

sidere

Plural

Nom.=voc.

mō̄lites

neces

rationes

sō̄dera

Gen.

mō̄litum

necum

rationum

sō̄derum

Dat.

mō̄litibus

necibus

rationibus

sō̄deribus

Acc.

mō̄lites

neces

rationes

sō̄dera

Abl.

mō̄litibus

necibus

rationibus

sō̄deribus

i-Stem Nouns

Here are some sample i-stem nouns of the third declension: mō̄ns, montis, -ium, m.

mountain

urbs, urbis, -ium, f.

city

mens, mentis, -ium, f.

mind

animal, animalis, -ium, n.

animal

nox, noctis, -ium, f.

night

navis, navis, -ium, f.

ship

mare, maris, -ium, n.

sea

i-stem nouns come formatted with an extra element, -ium. This is the genitive plural ending for these nouns, and it is included to indicate that such nouns are i-stem.

They decline as follows:

Singular

Nom.=voc.

mens

urbs

animal

Gen.

mentis

urbis

animalis

Dat.

menti

urbis

animali

Acc.

mentem

urbem

animal

Abl.

monte

urbe

anima

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

11

Plural

Nom.=voc.

montes

urbes

animas

Gen.

montium

urbium

animarum

Dat.

montibus

urbibus

animarum

Acc.

montes, -os

urbes, -es

animas

Abl.

montibus

urbibus

animarum

Note: All i-stem nouns have -ium in the genitive plural.

Masculine and feminine i-stem nouns have an alternate ending $\pm\text{os}$ in the accusative plural. (There is no difference in meaning.) Neuter i-stem nouns have

±ōÅ in the ablative singular and -ia in the nominative and accusative plural. The locative is identical to the ablative.

Exercises

8. Fully decline the following nouns:

1. corpus, corporis, n.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

2. meÅns, mentis, -ium, f.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

3. dolor, doloÅris, m.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

12

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

9. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. urbem

2. reAgō

3. voAcis

4. animaAlō

5. uAmen

6. urbis

7. nox

8. amoAre

10. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. sōdera

2. voluptatibus _____

3. urbeAs

4. doloArum

5. montōAs

6. mentium

7. animaAlia

8. naſvium

9. amoſribus

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Fourth-declension nouns have the ending -uſ in the genitive singular.

Here are some sample fourth-declension nouns:

spōſritus, spōſrituſ, m.

breath

fruſctus, fruſctuſ, m.

enjoyment

uſsus, uſsuſ, m.

use

cornuſ, cornuſ, n.

horn

genuſ, genuſ, n.

knee

cursus, cursuſ, m.

course

manus, manuſ, f.

hand

ŭctus, ŭctuſ, m.

wave

They decline as follows:

Singular

Plural

Nom.=voc.

uſsus

cornuſ

uſsuſ

cornua

Gen.

cornu

cornu

cornuum

cornuum

Dat.

cornu

cornu

cornibus

cornibus

Acc.

cornu

cornu

cornu

cornua

Abl.

cornu

cornu

cornibus

cornibus

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

13

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Fifth-declension nouns have the ending *-e* or *-e* in the genitive singular, depending on whether the stem ends in a consonant or vowel.

Here are some sample fifth-declension nouns:

res, *res*, f.

thing

die, *die*, m.

day

re, re, f.

faith

species, species, m.

appearance

They decline as follows:

Singular

Plural

Nom.=Voc.

re

die

re

die

Gen.

re

die

re

die

Dat.

re

die

re

die

Acc.

rem

diem

re

die

Abl.

re

die

rebus

diebus

Exercises

11. Fully decline the following nouns:

1. deus, deo, f.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

2. manus, manu, f.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

12. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are multiple possibilities, give all.)

1. re

2. die

3. fru

14

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

4. fru

5. genu

13. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are multiple possibilities, give all.)

1. genua

2. u

3. re

4. diebus

5. res

A Few Irregular Nouns

The noun *vis*, f. (force, violence) declines as follows: Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

vis

res

Genitive

vis

rum

Dative

vis

ribus

Accusative

vis

res, *-es*

Ablative

vis

ribus

The noun *domus*, *domus* or *domus*, f. (house, home) declines as follows. This noun has both second- and fourth-declension forms.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

domus

domus

Genitive

domus=*domus*

domuum=domoꝞrum

Dative

domuꝝ=domoꝞ

domibus

Accusative

domum

domuꝞs=domoꝞs

Ablative

domuꝞ=domoꝞ

domibus

The locative for this noun is domoꝞ.

The noun deus, deoꝞ, m. (god) declines as follows:

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

deus

deoꝞ

Genitive

deoꝞ

deoꝞrum=deum

Dative

deoꝞ

deoꝞs

Accusative

deum

deoꝞs

Ablative

deoꝞ

deoꝞs

4 In the plural this noun means 'bodily strength.'

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

15

Exercises

14. Based on the paradigms given, identify the declension for each of the following nouns:

1. reŕgōŕna, reŕgōŕnae, f.

2. specieŕs, specieŕōŕ, f.

3. lōŕtus, lōŕtoris, n.

4. exemplar, exemplaŕis, -ium n.

5. currus, curruŕs, m.

6. ager, agrōŕ, m.

7. saxum, saxōŕ, n.

8. nauta, nautae, m.

9. eques, equitis, m.

10. lōŕbertaŕs, lōŕbertaŕtis, f.

15. Translate the following forms according to their case and number: 1. lōŕbertaŕtem

2. equitum

3. saxōŕs (two poss.)

4. poeÅtae (three poss.)

5. agroÅs

6. exemplar

7. lÅtoris

8. specieÅÅ

9. reÅgÅnÅs

10. specieÅs lÅbertaÅtis

11. reÅx poeÅtaÅrum

12. saxa agrÅ

16. Change the following from singular to plural. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. currum

2. exemplaÅrÅ _____

3. reÅgÅnae

4. equite

5. lÅtus

17. Change the following from plural to singular. (If there are two possibilities, give both.)

1. poeÅtÅs

2. agroꝝrum

3. saxa

4. lōbertaꝝtum _____

5. reꝝgōꝝnaꝝs

16

CHAPTER 1 The Noun

18. On a separate sheet of paper, decline the following nouns: 1. puella, puellae, f.

2. dolor, doloris, m.

3. bellum, bellō, n.

4. spōꝝritus, spōꝝrituꝝs, m.

5. reꝝs, reꝝe, f.

6. urbs, urbis, -ium, f.

CHAPTER 2

The Adjective

An adjective is a word that modifies or describes a noun.

For an adjective to modify a noun in Latin, it must agree with it in gender, number, and case. Remember that gender is a permanent characteristic of a noun; only case and number are shown by ending. An adjective by itself has no gender, but reflects the gender of the noun that it modifies. Thus adjectives must be capable of showing each of the three genders.

Like nouns, adjectives belong to declensions from which they take their endings.

Adjectives fall into two groups: first-second-declension adjectives and third-declension adjectives.

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

First-second-declension adjectives take their endings from the first and second declensions of nouns. That is, they take their masculine and neuter endings from the second declension and their feminine endings from the first.

Here are some examples of first-second-declension adjectives: bonus, bona, bonum

good

malus, mala, malum

bad

duŀrus, duŀra, duŀrum

hard

miser, misera, miserum

wretched

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

beautiful

dexter, dextra, dextrum

right

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum

left

frŃgidus, frŃgida, frŃgidum

cold

magnus, magna, magnum

large, great

Given above are the nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter.

The stem for declining the adjective is obtained by dropping the ending -a from the feminine nominative singular.

17

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

18

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

As stated, these adjectives decline using the endings of the first and second declensions. They use the endings of the first declension for their feminine forms and the second declension for their masculine and neuter forms.

The stem for malus, mala, malum is mal-. It declines as follows: Masculine

Feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nominative

malus

mala

malum

Genitive

malō

mae

malō

Dative

malo

mae

malo

Accusative

malum

malam

malum

Ablative

malo

mala

malo

Vocative

male

mala

malum

Plural

Nominative=vocative

malō

mae

mala

Genitive

malo

mala

malo

Dative

malōs

malō

malō

Accusative

malo

mala

mala

Ablative

malō

malō

malō

The stem for miser, misera, miserum is miser-. Such adjectives have -er in the masculine nominative and vocative singular. Otherwise, they decline as malus above.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct form of the adjective magnus, magna, magnum to agree with the following nouns. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. puer

2. urbis

3. regnō

4. agricolarum

5. amore

6. cursu

7. res

8. victum

9. puella

10. mentium

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

19

2. Decline fully the following phrases:

1. reÅx bonus

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

2. urbs pulchra

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

3. bellum duÅrum

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

Third-Declension Adjectives

Third-declension adjectives take their endings from the third declension.

Depending on the number of forms they show in the nominative singular, they are divided into adjectives of three terminations, two terminations, or one termination.

THREE-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES

aĀcer, aĀcris, aĀcre

sharp

celer, celeris, celere

swift

Given are the nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter. The stem is obtained by dropping the ending -is from the feminine nominative singular. They decline as follows:

20

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

Masculine

Feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nom.=voc.

aĀcer

aĀcris

aĀcre

Gen.

aĀcris

aĀcris

aĀcris

Dat.

aĀcrōĀ

aĀcrōĀ

aĀcrōĀ

Acc.

aŒrem

aŒrem

aŒre

Abl.

aŒrŒ

aŒrŒ

aŒrŒ

Plural

Nom.=Voc.

aŒreŒs

aŒreŒs

aŒria

Gen.

aŒrium

aŒrium

aŒrium

Dat.

aŒribus

aŒribus

aŒribus

Acc.

aŒreŒs, -Œs

aŒreŒs, -Œs

aŒria

Abl.

aŒribus

aŒribus

aŒribus

Note: Third-declension adjectives decline like i-stem nouns, showing

-ium in the genitive plural

-ia in the nominative and accusative plural neuter

The alternate ending -ōs in the masculine and feminine accusative plural The ablative singular ending for all genders is -ō.

TWO-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES

omnis, omne

every, all

noābilis, noābile

noble

facilis, facile

easy

grandis, grande

big

Given are the masculine-feminine and neuter singular. This is to say that two-termination adjectives use the same form for the masculine and feminine. The stem is still obtained by removing the ending -is from the feminine (and, in this case, masculine) nominative singular.

They decline as follows:

Masculine=feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nom.=voc.

omnis

omne

Gen.

omnis

omnis

Dat.

omnōs

omnōs

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

21

Acc.

omnem

omne

Abl.

omnō

omnō

Plural

Nom.=voc.

omne

omnia

Gen.

omnium

omnium

Dat.

omnibus

omnibus

Acc.

omne, -ō

omnia

Abl.

omnibus

omnibus

ONE-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES

simplex, simplicis

simple

audax, audacis

bold

deamens, deamentis

insane

One-termination adjectives do not distinguish gender at all in the nominative singular. They do, however, distinguish the neuter from the masculine=feminine at other points in the declension.

Given are the nominative and genitive singular for all three genders. The stem is obtained by removing the ending -is from the genitive singular form.

They decline as follows:

Masculine=feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nom.=voc.

audax

audax

Gen.

audacis

audacis

Dat.

audacō

audacō

Acc.

audacem

audax

Abl.

audacō

audacō

Plural

Nom.=voc.

audaces

audacia

Gen.

audacium

audacium

Dat.

audacibus

audacibus

Acc.

auda

auda

Abl.

auda

auda

Exercises

3. Choose the correct form of *no* to modify the following nouns. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.) 22

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

1. re

2. urbibus

3. saxum

4. puella

5. amo

6. bella

7. anima

8. specie

9. rem

10. poe

4. Fully decline the following phrases:

1. puella de

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

2. reÅs facilis

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

5. Choose the correct forms of the adjectives malus, -a, -um and grandis, -e to agree with the following nouns:

malus

grandis

1. avāritiae

2. filiō

3. bella

4. animālibus _____

5. urbium

6. amorē

7. ventus

8. manu

9. gaudium

10. reŕum

11. naŕvis

12. voluptaŕtŕ

13. viroŕum

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

23

14. montŕs

15. tempus

Adjectives with the Genitive

Singular in -ŕus

There is a group of nine adjectives belonging essentially to the first-second declension with the slight irregularity of taking -ŕus in the genitive singular and -ŕ

in the dative singular. They are:

alius, alia, aliud

another

alter, altera, alterum

the other (of two)

uter, utra, utrum

which (of two)

neuter, neutra, neutrum

neither

ullus, ulla, ullum

any

nullus, nulla, nullum

no, none

solus, sola, solum

only

totus, tota, totum

whole

unus, una, unum

one

They decline as follows:

Masculine

Feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nom.=voc.

unus

una

unum

Gen.

unus

una

unus

Dat.

unus

uÅnõÅ

uÅnõÅ

Acc.

uÅnum

uÅnam

uÅnum

Abl.

uÅnoÅ

uÅnlaÅ

uÅnoÅ

In the plural these adjectives decline as regular @rst-second-declension adjectives.

Note: Only alius, alia, aliud ends in -ud in the neuter nominative and accusative singular. The genitive singular for this adjective, which would have been the ungainly aliõÅus, is supplied by alterõÅus. All the others decline as uÅnus above.

Exercise

6. Choose the correct form of the adjective toÅtus, ±a, ±um to agree with the following nouns. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.) 1. virõÅ

2. urbe

3. moÅns

24

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

4. mentis

5. meÅnsae

6. reõÅ

7. belloÅ

Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives are said to have three degrees:

The positive, e.g.,

fat

The comparative, e.g.,

fatter

The superlative, e.g.,

fattest

So far we have looked only at formations of the positive degree. To form the comparative and superlative degrees for any adjective, the same stem is used as is used for the positive.

THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE

The comparative degree is formed as a two-termination adjective of the third declension. For example, the comparative of *duŕrus*, -a, -um (hard) is *duŕrior*, *duŕrius*

harder

It declines as follows:

Masculine=feminine

Neuter

Singular

Nom.=voc.

duŕrior

duŕrius

Gen.

duŕrioris

duŕrioris

Dat.

duŕriori

duŕriori

Acc.

duŕriorem

duŕrius

Abl.

duÅrioÅrõÅ, -e

duÅrioÅrõÅ, -eÅ

Plural

Nom.=voc.

duÅrioÅreÅs

duÅrioÅra

Gen.

duÅrioÅrum

duÅrioÅrum

Dat.

duÅrioÅribus

duÅrioÅribus

Acc.

duÅrioÅreÅs

duÅrioÅra

Abl.

duÅrioÅribus

duÅrioÅribus

Note: The comparative degree declines more like a third-declension noun than adjective; all i-stem features are lacking.

The ablative singular ending may be -õÅ or -e.

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

25

Exercise

7. Decline the phrase *poeÅta grandior*.

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

The superlative degree is formed by adding the ending -issimus, -a, -um to the stem.

It declines as a regular 1st-second-declension adjective: duārrissimus, duārrissima, duārrissimum

hardest

Adjectives ending in -er in the masculine nominative singular form the superlative by adding -rimus directly to this form:

pulcherrimus, -a, -um

most beautiful

miserrimus, -a, -um

most wretched

celerrimus, -a, -um

swiftest

There are six adjectives ending in -lis that form the superlative by adding -limus,

-a, -um to the stem:

gracillimus, -a, -um

most slender

These are:

facilis, facile

easy

dificilis, difficile

dif@cult

similis, simile

similar

dissimilis, dissimile

dissimilar

humilis, humile

humble

gracilis, gracile

slender

Their comparatives are regular.

Exercises

8. Decline the following phrases.

1. reÅs facillima

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

26

CHAPTER 2 The Adjective

Accusative

Ablative

2. reAgõAna miserrima

Singular

Plural

Nominative=vocative

Genitive

Dative

Accusative

Ablative

Some adjectives do not form their comparative and superlative degrees in the regular manner.

Positive

Comparative

Superlative

bonus, -a, -um

melior, melius

optimus, -a, -um

malus, -a, -um

peior, peius

pessimus, -a, -um

magnus, -a, -um

maior, maius

maximus, -a, -um

parvus, -a, -um

minor, minus

minimus, -a, -um

multus, -a, -um

pluŕis, pluŕis

pluŕimus, -a, -um

9. Translate the following phrases:

1. spuŕitus acer

2. voŕteŕis humillimae

3. reŕeŕeŕis duŕissimus

4. luxuria maxima

5. ŕeŕeŕis minima

6. meŕeŕis melior

7. ventus optimus

8. fŕuŕtus maior

9. gaudium deŕeŕeŕis

10. libertaŕis nobilissima

11. *navium pulcherrimarum* _____

12. *animas pessimas*

1 *Plu* does not decline normally. It is used as a noun.

CHAPTER 3

Pronouns and

Adjectives

A pronoun stands in the place of a noun that is itself understood or named in the context of the pronoun's usage.

For example, normally in such sentences as "It's good" or "That's great," we know what "that" and "it" refer to. "I," "you," and so on, when used correctly, are similarly clear in their reference.

Personal Pronouns

I

you

we

you (pl.)

Nom.

ego

tu

nos

vos

Gen.

mei

tui

nostrum=nostrum

vestrum=vestrum

Dat.

mihi

tibi

nobis

vobis

Acc.

me

te

no

vo

Abl.

me

te

no

vo

There is no separate third-person personal pronoun in Latin. It is supplied by the demonstrative *is, ea, id*.

Personal pronouns in Latin function just as they do in English. However, they are not required as subjects to make an otherwise subjectless verb form complete in meaning. Their use is often emphatic.

1 Of these two pairs, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, *nostrō* and *vestrō* as objective genitives.

See Noun Syntax, p. 80.

27

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

28

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

Exercise

1. Supply the correct personal pronoun as the subject of the following verb forms.

1. _____

duco

2. _____

ambimus

3. _____

pellitis

4. _____

clama

Re-exive Pronouns

A re-exive pronoun is a pronoun that refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it occurs. In the first and second persons, it is identical to the personal pronoun. However, there is a third-person re-exive pronoun in

Latin: Nom.

Ē

Gen.

suŃ

Dat.

sibi

Acc.

se

Abl.

se

This pronoun may be masculine, feminine, neuter, singular, or plural. There is no nominative because in order for the pronoun to be reflexive, it must refer to the subject. It cannot be the subject itself.

Exercise

2. Supply the correct form of the reflexive pronoun as the direct object for the following sentences:

1. _____ amamus.

2. omnes homines _____ amant.

3. _____ amatis.

4. Regina bona _____ amat.

Possessive Adjectives

Related to personal and reflexive pronouns are possessive adjectives: meus, mea, meum

my

tuus, tua, tuum

your

noster, nostra, nostrum

our

vester, vestra, vestrum

your (pl.)

suus, sua, suum

his, her, their

These conjugate as regular first-second-declension adjectives.

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

Personal and reflexive pronouns do not show gender in themselves, though they will in context when modified by adjectives.

There are other pronouns, however, that do refer specifically to nouns. Since Latin nouns show gender, number, and case, so will these pronouns. This makes them much closer to adjectives. In fact, with the exception of personal and reflexive pronouns, Latin pronouns are adjectives—or rather, they are words that can be either adjective or pronoun, depending on their usage.

If they modify nouns—that is, appear with them, agreeing in gender, number, and case—then they are adjectives. If they only refer to them, without the nouns appearing with them, they are pronouns.

In some cases, there are slight differences of declension corresponding to these differences of usage.

Demonstratives

The demonstrative pronouns=adjectives point out something: hic, haec, hoc

this

ille, illa, illud

that

is, ea, id

this, that (unemphatic)

ōÅdem, eadem, idem

the same

iste, ista, istud

that²

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

self

They decline the same way whether used as adjectives or pronouns: Singular

Plural

Masc.

Fem.

Neuter

Masc.

Fem.

Neuter

Nom. hic

haec

hoc

hōĀ

hae

haec

Gen. huius

huius

huius

hoĀrum

haĀrum

hoĀrum

Dat. huic

huic

huic

hōĀs

hōĀs

hōĀs

Acc. hunc

hanc

hoc

hoĀs

haĀs

haec

Abl. hoĀc

haĀc

hoĀc

hōĀs

hōĀs

hōĀs

Nom. ille

illa

illud

illōĀ

illae

illa

Gen. illōĀus

illōĀus

illōĀus

illoĀrum

illaĀrum

illoĀrum

Dat. illōĀ

illōĀ

illōĀ

illōĀs

illōĀs

illōĀs

Acc. illum

illam

illud

illoĀs

illaĀs

illa

Abl. illoĀ

illaĀ

illoĀ

illōĀs

illōĀs

illōĀs

Nom. is

ea

id

eō, iō

eae

ea

Gen. eīus

eīus

eīus

eoꝝ

eaꝝ

eoꝝ

2 This demonstrative often implies contempt.

30

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

Dat. eō

eō

eō

eōs, iōs

eōs, iōs

eōs, iōs

Acc. eum

eam

id

eoꝝ

eaꝝ

ea

Abl. eoꝝ

eaꝝ

eoꝝ

eōs, iōs

eōÅs, iōÅs

eōÅs, iōÅs

Nom. òÅdem

eadem idem

eōÅdem=

eaedem

eadem

òÅdem

Gen. eÅiusdem eÅiusdem eÅiusdem

eoÅrundem eaÅrundem eoÅrundem

Dat. eōÅdem

eōÅdem

eōÅdem

eōÅsdem=

eōÅsdem=

eōÅsdem=

òÅsdem

òÅsdem

òÅsdem

Acc. eundem eandem idem

eoÅsdem

eaÅsdem

eadem

Abl. eoÅdem eaÅdem eoÅdem

eōÅsdem=

eōÅsdem=

eōÅsdem=

òÅsdem

òÅsdem

òÅsdem

Nom. iste

ista

istud

istō

istae

ista

Gen. istōrum

istōrum

istōrum

istorum

istorum

istorum

Dat. istō

istō

istō

istō

istō

istō

Acc. istum

istam

istud

istō

istō

ista

Abl. isto

ista

isto

istō

istō

istō

Nom. ipse

ipsa

ipsum

ipsō

ipsae

ipsa

Gen. ipsō

ipsō

ipsō

ipso

ipsa

ipso

Dat. ipsō

ipsō

ipsō

ipsō

ipsō

ipsō

Acc. ipsum

ipsam

ipsum

ipso

ipsa

ipsa

Abl. ipso

ipsa

ipso

ipsō

ipsō

ipsō

Note: Sometimes ipse is called an intensifier because it intensifies the force of the word it modifies:

ego ipse id videri.

I myself saw it.

ego virum ipsum videri.

I saw the man himself.

Exercises

3. Supply the correct form of the demonstrative adjective in parentheses to agree with the following nouns:

- _____ puella (hic, haec, hoc)
- _____ montem (ille, illa, illud)
- _____ urbium (is, ea, id)
- _____ res (ipse, ipsa, ipsum)
- _____ fratrum (eadem, eadem, idem)
- _____ ventus (hic, haec, hoc)
- _____ regis (is, ea, id)
- _____ fructibus (ille, illa, illud)

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

31

- _____ terra (eadem, eadem, idem)
- _____ videri (ipse, ipsa, ipsum)

4. Translate the following phrases:

1. illa regina

2. vos ipsi

3. eadem ventus

4. hae puellae

5. illa saxa

6. ille vōŀvit

7. ipsa venit

8. illa ipsa venit

9. fratrem eŀius vōŀdōŀ

10. ille vōŀvet; hic morieŀtur

Relatives

The man who lives here is evil.

In this sentence, the word who is a relative pronoun. That is to say, it is a pronoun which refers to a noun in the sentence and also begins a clause of its own.

In the example above, who refers to the noun man. The word to which a relative pronoun refers is called an antecedent.

The clause who lives here is called a relative clause. (For uses of the relative clause, see p. 119.) Relative clauses are introduced by relative pronouns.

In Latin, the relative pronoun declines as follows: Singular

Plural

Masc.

Fem.

Neuter

Masc.

Fem.

Neuter

Nom.

quōŀ

quae

quod

quōŀ

quae

quae

Gen.

cuius

cuius

cuius

quoꝝrum

quaꝝrum

quoꝝrum

Dat.

cui

cui

cui

quibus

quibus

quibus

Acc.

quem

quam

quod

quoꝝs

quaꝝs

quae

Abl.

quoꝝ

quaꝝ

quoꝝ

quibus

quibus

quibus

Interrogatives

Interrogatives are used to ask questions. There is a slight difference in declension between the pronoun and the adjective. The interrogative adjective is identical to the relative pronoun. The interrogative pronoun joins the masculine and feminine in the singular. It declines as follows:

32

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

Masc.=Fem.

Neut.

Nom.

quis

quid

Gen.

cuius

cuius

Dat.

cui

cui

Acc.

quem

quid

Abl.

quo

quo

As you can see, it differs from the relative only in the nominative case and in the neuter accusative.

The plural declines in the same way as the relative.

Exercise

5. Supply the correct form of the relative=interrogative adjective to agree with the following nouns:

1. _____ mentō
2. _____ bellō
3. _____ amo
4. _____ servō
5. _____ nautae

6. _____ fōĀliaĀrum

7. _____ montibus

8. _____ gladioĀs

9. _____ animaĀlium

10. _____ reĀbus

Inde@nites

Inde@nite pronouns=adjectives are not precise in their reference.

aliquōĀ, alōĀqua, aliquod (adj.)

some

aliquis, aliquid (pro.)

someone

These decline in the same way as the interrogative, with the pre@x ali- added.

quōĀdam, quaedam,

a certain (person)

quiddam=quoddam

quōĀque, quaeque, quidque (adj.)

each

quisque, quidque (pro.)

each

quisquam, quidquam (quicquam³)

anyone, anything

(pro.)⁴

These decline in the same way as the relative pronoun.

³ Alternative spelling.

⁴ The adjective corresponding to this pronoun is ullus, -a, -um. See p. 23.

CHAPTER 3 Pronouns and Adjectives

33

Exercises

6. Supply the correct form of the inde@nite adjective in parentheses to agree with the following nouns:

1. _____ homoĀ (aliquōĀ, aliqua, aliquod)

2. _____ pueroſ (quodſque, quaeque, quodque) 3. _____ reſgna (quodſdam, quaedam, quidam)

4. _____ uſminis (aliquodſ, aliqua, aliquod) 5. _____ nox (quodſque, quaeque, quodque)

7. Translate the following phrases:

1. aliqua pecuſnia

2. quaeque reſgōſna

3. quoddam bellum _____

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 4

The Verb

Like nouns, Latin verbs are inflected; that is, they take different endings to express different grammatical meanings.

Their inflection is called conjugation. Just as nouns belong to different declensions, verbs belong to different conjugations, which are systems of endings for the expression of grammatical information. Through these endings Latin verbs show the properties of person, number, voice, mood, and tense.

Person and Number

Person and number refer to the subject of a verb. There are three persons and two numbers:

Singular

Plural

1st

I

we

2nd

you

you (pl.)

3rd

he, she, it

they

Voice

There are two voices: active and passive. These terms refer to whether the subject performs or suffers the action represented by the verb: Active:

I bite

Passive: I am bitten

35

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

36

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Mood

There are three moods: indicative, subjunctive, and imperative. These refer to the quality of information meant by the verb, i.e., how the listener should understand what is conveyed.

INDICATIVE

The indicative is the mood of facts. It is used for the direct assertion of facts or for questions about them:

He eats.

Does he eat?

SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive is used for uncertainties, possibilities, conditions, indirect questions, and so on, both independently and in a broad range of subordinate clauses.

Its translation often involves modal auxiliaries such as may, might, should, and would;

If I were a rich man, I would buy a red car.

I was afraid he might do that.

In Latin the verbs italicized above would take the subjunctive.

IMPERATIVE

The imperative mood expresses commands:

Eat!

Let them eat cake!

Tense

The tense of a verb expresses the time and aspect of the action that it represents.

Time refers to whether the action takes place in the past, present, or future.

Aspect refers to whether the action is represented as completed or not completed.

For example:

“He has eaten” expresses a completed action. We know from this verb's tense that the eating is finished.

“He is eating” expresses an action that is not completed.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

37

Latin has six tenses of the indicative mood, corresponding to these three times and two aspects:

Uncompleted aspect:

(Present)

Present

I eat, I am eating

(Past)

Imperfect

I was eating, I used to eat

(Future)

Future

I will eat, I will be eating

Completed aspect:

(Present)

Perfect

I have eaten, I ate

(Past)

Pluperfect

I had eaten

(Future)

Future perfect

I will have eaten

Note: The perfect tense is capable of expressing an action in present or past time, corresponding to the English uses 'I ate' and 'I have eaten.' In both cases, however, the action is expressed as completed.

There are four tenses of the subjunctive:

Uncompleted

Completed

Present

Perfect

Imperfect

Pluperfect

There are two tenses of the imperative:

Present

Future

Conjugations

Just as nouns belong to different declensions, verbs belong to different conjugations.

The process of conjugating a verb consists of adding inflectional endings to stems in different combinations to show person, number, voice, tense, and mood.

Verbs are learned according to their principal parts. These are the forms that provide the necessary stems for conjugation in all the tenses, moods, and voices. For example:

amō, amāre, amāvō, amātus

love

teneō, tenere, tenuō, tentus

have

dō, docere, dixō, dictus

say, tell

capio, capere, cepō, captus

take, capture

audio, audire, audivō, audītus

hear

38

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

The first principal part is the first-person-singular present indicative active of its verb:

amō

I love

teneō

I have

The second principal part is the present infinitive active: amāre

to love

tenere

to have

The ending for the infinitive is -re. It is the vowel found before this ending that defines to which conjugation a verb belongs. There are four: First-conjugation verbs have

-a- in the second principal part: ama-re

Second-conjugation verbs have -e- in the second principal part: tene-re
Third-conjugation verbs have -e- in the second principal part: dō-vere, capere
Fourth-conjugation verbs have -ō- in the second principal part: aud-ō-re
The third principal part is the first-person-singular perfect indicative active of its verb:

ama-vi

I loved, I have loved

ce-pi

I captured, I have captured

The fourth principal part is the perfect passive participle of its verb:¹

ama-tus

(having been) loved

tentus

(having been) held

The Latin verbal system divides conjugations into two systems. The present system comprises

Present, future, and imperfect indicative

Present and imperfect subjunctive

Present and future imperatives

The perfect system comprises

Perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative

Perfect and pluperfect subjunctive

Present System

All tenses of the present system are formed using the present stem. The present stem is obtained by removing the infinitive ending -re from the second principal part.

ama-

tene-

dō-

ce-

aud-

¹ Some grammars give the fourth principal part ending in -tum rather than -tus. However, this will serve the same purpose of providing a stem for the perfect passive system.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

39

Note: In the third conjugation the -e- turns to -i- with the loss of the ending -re.

To indicate person and number, Latin employs two sets of endings, one for the active voice and one for the passive:

Active personal endings

Passive personal endings

Singular

Plural

Singular

Plural

1st

-o, -m

-mus

-or, -r

-mur

2nd

-s

-tis

-ris=-re

-mini

3rd

-t

-nt

-tur

-ntur

To conjugate the different tenses of the present system, one simply adds these endings to different versions of the present stem.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

For the present indicative, the endings above are added to the present stem as is. For the active voice, the active endings are used.

Sing.

1st

amo

teneo

dōco

capio

audio

2nd

amas

teneas

dōcis

capis

audis

3rd

amat

tenet

dicit

capit

audit

Plur.

1st

amamus

teneamus

dōcimus

capimus

audimus

2nd

amatis

teneatis

dōcitis

capitis

audō

3rd

amant

tenent

dicunt

capiunt

audiunt

amant

they love, they are loving

Notes:

The present indicative active uses the ending -ō in the 1st person singular. The 1st person singular must be learned separately as a principal part because it cannot be derived automatically from the present stem.

The endings -t and -nt shorten preceding long vowels.

When reading a Latin verb form, analyze its components to identify it: The ending -nt indicates that it is third person plural active and the stem ama- that it is present indicative.

Some third-conjugation verbs have -i- in the 1st principal part and at other points in their conjugation. These are called i-stem verbs.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

For this voice the passive personal endings are used.

Sing.

1st

amor

teneor

dō

capior

audior

2nd

amāris

teneāris

dōceris

caperis

audōris

amaŕre

teneŕre

dŏŕcere

capere

audŏŕre

40

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

3rd

amaŕtur

teneŕtur

dŏŕcitur

capitur

audŏŕtur

Plur.

1st

amaŕmur

teneŕmur

dŏŕcimur

capimur

audŏŕmur

2nd

amaŕminŏŕ

teneŕminŏŕ

dŏŕciminŏŕ

capiminŏŕ

audŏŕminŏŕ

3rd

amantur

tenentur

dicuntur

capiuntur

audiuntur

Capitur

he, she, it is captured.

Notes:

The 1st person singular uses the ending -or.

The second person singular has the alternative ending -re. There is no difference in meaning between this and the ending -ris, but this form is identical in appearance to the second principal part.

The endings -r and -ntur shorten preceding long vowels.

Before the endings -ris and -re, short -i becomes -e.

Exercises

1. Conjugate the following verbs in the present indicative active.

1. ducere, ducere, ductus to lead

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2. venire, venire, ventus to come

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

3. iacio, iacere, iactus to hurl

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2 This is visible in the second principal part of third-conjugation verbs. When the -re is removed to form the present stem, the -e reverts to -i.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

41

2. Conjugate the following verbs in the present indicative passive.

1. impleo, implere, implere, implere, implere to fill

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2. pello, pellere, pepulō, pulsus to push

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

3. paro, parere, parāvō, parātus to prepare

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

3. Identify the following forms according to person, number, and voice.

Then translate.

1. implemus

2. duĀcitur

3. iaciunt

4. parantur

5. pellis

6. pelleris

7. iaciminōĀ

8. paraĀtis

9. duĀcunt

10. impleĀmur

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

To form this tense, -baĀ- is added to the present stem, followed by the active personal endings:

Sing. 1st amaĀbam

teneĀbam

dōĀceĀbam

capieĀbam

audieĀbam

2nd amaĀbaĀs

teneĀbaĀs

dōĀceĀbaĀs

capieĀbaĀs

audieĀbaĀs

3rd amaĀbat

teneĀbat

diceĀbat

capieĀbat

audieĀbat

42

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Plur. 1st amaĀbaĀmus teneĀbaĀmus dōĀceĀbaĀmus capieĀbaĀmus audieĀbaĀmus 2nd amaĀbaĀtis

teneĀbaĀtis

dōĀceĀbaĀtis

capieĀbaĀtis

audieĀbaĀtis

3rd amaĀbant

teneĀbant

diceĀbant

capieĀbant

audieĀbant

diceĀbaĀs

you were saying, you used to say

Notes:

The first person singular uses the ending -m, which shortens preceding long vowels.

Third-conjugation verbs take long -eĀ- before the -baĀ-.

i-stem third- and all fourth-conjugation verbs show -ieĀ- before -baĀ-.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

To form this tense, -baĀ- is added to the present stem, followed by the passive personal endings:

Sing. 1st amaĀbar

teneĀbar

dōĀceĀbar

capieĀbar

audieĀbar

2nd amaĀbaĀris

teneĀbaĀris

dōĀceĀbaĀris

capieĀbaĀris

audōĀbaĀris

amaĀbaĀre

teneĀbaĀre

diceĀbaĀre

capieĀbaĀre

audōĀeĀbaĀre

3rd amaĀbaĀtur teneĀbaĀtur dōĀceĀbaĀtur capieĀbaĀtur audieĀbaĀtur Plur. 1st amaĀbaĀmur teneĀbaĀmur dōĀceĀbaĀmur capieĀbaĀmur audieĀbaĀmur 2nd amaĀbaĀminōĀ teneĀbaĀminōĀ dōĀceĀbaĀminōĀ capieĀbaĀminōĀ audieĀbaĀminōĀ

3rd amaĀbantur teneĀbantur diceĀbantur capieĀbantur audieĀbantur amaĀbaĀminōĀ

you (pl.) were being loved, you (pl.) used to be loved Note: The 1st person singular uses the ending -r, which shortens the preceding long vowel.

Exercises

4. Conjugate the following verbs in the imperfect indicative active.

1. impleoĀ, impleĀre, impleĀvōĀ, impleĀtus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

43

2. pello, pellere, pepulsi, pulsus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

3. venio, venire, veni, ventus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

5. Conjugate the following verbs in the imperfect indicative passive.

1. duco, ducere, duxi, ductus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2. habeo, habere, habui, habitus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

6. Identify the following forms according to person, number, and voice.

Then translate.

1. pelleÅbaÅmur

2. habeÅbaÅmus

3. duÅceÅbam

4. pelleÅbaÅminõÅ

5. impleÅbantur

6. venieÅbant

7. habeÅbaÅtur

8. impleÅbat

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

This tense is formed differently for the different conjugations: For the first and second conjugations -bi- is added to

the present stem.

For non*i*-stem third-conjugation verbs, the vowel of the stem changes to *-e*.

44

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

For *i*-stem third- and fourth-conjugation verbs, the vowel of the stem changes to *-ie*.

Then the active personal endings are added:

Sing.

1st

*ama*bo

*tene*bo

*dō*cam

capiam

audiam

2nd

*ama*bis

*tene*bis

*dō*ce

*capie*s

*audō*e

3rd

*ama*bit

*tene*bit

*dō*cet

capiet

audiet

Plur.

1st

*ama*bimus

*tene*bimus

*dō*cemus

capieÅmus

audieÅmus

2nd

amaÅbitis

teneÅbitis

dõÅceÅtis

capieÅtis

audieÅtis

3rd

amaÅbunt

teneÅbunt

dõÅcent

capient

audient

teneÅbunt

they will have

dõÅceÅmus

we will say

Notes:

In the 1st and second conjugations, the 1st-person singular uses the ending -oÅ.

The -i- of -bi- is absorbed into the -oÅ.

In the third and fourth conjugations, the 1st-person singular uses -m. The vowel

-eÅ- changes to -aÅ- (short before 3rd -m).

In third-person plural the -i- of -bi- changes to -u- before -nt.

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

The same stem alterations are used with the passive personal endings: Sing. 1st

amaÅbor

teneÅbor

dõÅcar

capiar

audiar

2nd amaÅberis

teneÅberis

dõÅceÅris

capieÅris

audieÅris

amaÅbere

teneÅbere

diceÅre

capieÅre

audieÅre

3rd

amaÅbitur

teneÅbitur

dõÅceÅtur

capieÅtur

audieÅtur

Plur.

1st

amaÅbimur

teneÅbimur

dõÅceÅmur

capieÅmur

audieÅmur

2nd amaÅbiminõÅ

teneÅbiminõÅ

dõÅceÅminõÅ capieÅminõÅ audieÅminõÅ

3rd

amaÅbuntur teneÅbuntur dicentur capientur audientur amaÅbor

I will be loved

capieĀminōĀ

you (pl.) will be captured

Note: The i of -bi- changes to e before -ris and -re, and to u before -ntur.

Exercises

7. Conjugate the following verbs in the future indicative active.

1. paroĀ, paraĀre, paraĀvōĀ, paraĀtus

Singular

Plural

1st

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

45

2nd

3rd

2. duĀcoĀ, duĀcere, duĀxōĀ, ductus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

8. Conjugate the following verbs in the future indicative passive.

1. impleo, impleare, implevō, impletus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2. audio, audire, audivō, auditus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

9. Identify the following forms according to person, number, and voice.

Then translate.

1. parabis

2. implebo

3. duces

4. audietur

5. pellam

6. parantur

7. habebitis

8. pellemus

9. implebere

10. ducesin

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

To form the present subjunctive, the present stem for each conjugation must change its vowel.

1st

2nd

3rd

3rd i-stem

4th

ame-

tenea-

dica-

capia-

audia-

Then the personal endings are added.

46

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Sing.

1st

amem

teneam

dō&amacron;cam

cipiam

audiam

2nd

ame&amacron;ſ

tenea&amacron;ſ

dō&amacron;ca&amacron;ſ

capia&amacron;ſ

audia&amacron;ſ

3rd

amet

teneat

dicat

capiat

audiat

Plur.

1st

ame&amacron;mus

tenea&amacron;mus

dō&amacron;ca&amacron;mus

capia&amacron;mus

audia&amacron;mus

2nd

amēntis

teneāntis

dōcāntis

capiantis

audiantis

3rd

ament

teneant

dicant

capiant

audiant

Note: The 1st-person singular uses the ending -m.

In the third and fourth conjugations, 1st-person singular is identical to the same form of the future indicative.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

The same stem alterations are used with the passive personal endings: Sing.

1st

amer

tenear

dōcar

capiar

audiar

2nd

amēris

teneāris

dōcāris

capiantis

audiantis

amēre

teneāre

dōcāre

capiaĀre

audiaĀre

3rd

ameĀtur

teneaĀtur

dōĀcaĀtur

capiaĀtur

audiaĀtur

Plur.

1st

ameĀmur

teneaĀmur

dōĀcaĀmur

capiaĀmur

audiaĀmur

2nd

ameĀminōĀ

teneaĀminōĀ

dōĀcaĀminōĀ

capiaĀminōĀ

audiaĀminōĀ

3rd

amentur

teneantur

dōĀcantur

capiantur

audiantur

The following is perhaps a helpful mnemonic device for remembering the vowel changes for the formation of the present subjunctive: 1st

2nd

3rd

3rd i-stem

4th

hEÅ

wEAÅrs

AÅ

gIAÅnt

tIAÅra

Exercises

10. Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive active: 1. paroÅ, paraÅre, paraÅvõÅ, paraÅtus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2. facioÅ, facere, feÅcõÅ, factus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

47

11. Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive passive.

1. habeo, habere, habuisti, habitus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

2. duco, ducere, duxisti, ductus

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

This tense is formed using the entire second principal part for its stem. The final -e is lengthened and the active personal endings applied: Sing. 1st

ama^{re}m

tene^{re}m

dō^{re}m

capere^m

audō^{re}m

2nd ama^{re}ās

tene^{re}ās

dō^{re}ās

capere^{ās}

audō^{re}ās

3rd ama^{re}t

tene^{re}t

dō^{re}t

caperet

audō^{re}t

Plur.

1st

ama^{re}āmus tene^{re}āmus dō^{re}āmus capere^{āmus} audō^{re}āmus 2nd ama^{re}ātis

tene^{re}ātis

dō^{re}ātis

capere^{ātis}

audō^{re}ātis

3rd ama^{re}nt

tene^{re}nt

dō^{re}nt

caperent

audō^{re}nt

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

This tense is formed like the active, with the passive personal endings: Sing. 1st

amaĀrer

teneĀrer

dōĀcerer

caperer

audōĀrer

2nd amaĀreĀris

teneĀreĀris

dōĀcereĀris

capereĀris

audōĀreĀris

amaĀreĀre

teneĀreĀre

dōĀcereĀre

capereĀre

audōĀreĀre

3rd amaĀreĀtur

teneĀreĀtur

dōĀcereĀtur

capereĀtur

audōĀreĀtur

Plur. 1st

amaĀreĀmur teneĀreĀmur dōĀcereĀmur capereĀmur audōĀreĀmur 2nd amaĀreĀminōĀ teneĀreĀminōĀ
dōĀcereĀminōĀ capereĀminōĀ audōĀreĀminōĀ

3rd amaĀrentur teneĀrentur dōĀcerentur caperentur audōĀrentur Note: Because the entire infinitive is used as the stem, there is no real distinction among conjugations in the imperfect subjunctive.

48

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Exercises

12. Conjugate the verb facioĀ, facere, feĀcōĀ, factus in the imperfect subjunctive active.

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

13. Conjugate the verb *ducere*, *ducere*, *dux*, *ductus* in the imperfect subjunctive passive.

Singular

Plural

1st

2nd

3rd

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

The present imperative singular is formed by dropping the -re from the second principal part. The plural takes the ending -te:

Sing.

ama

tene

age

cape

audō

Plur.

amaĀte

teneĀte

agite

capite

audōĀte

cape!

Take

Note: Before the ending -te in the third and fourth conjugations, the stem vowel

-i- returns.

There are four verbs that form the imperative irregularly: Sing.

Plur.

dōĀc

say

dōĀcite

duĀc

lead

duĀcite

fac

do

facite

fer

carry

ferte

PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

The passive imperative is identical to the second-person singular and plural of the present indicative:

Plur.

amaĀre

teneĀre

agere

capere

audōre

Sing.

ama minō

tene minō

agiminō

capiminō

audō minō

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

49

Note: In the singular, only the -re ending is used (not -ris). The present imperative passive is identical in form to the present infinitive active. Context will enable you to tell the difference between them.

FUTURE IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

The future imperative has both second and third persons: Sing.

2nd

ama to

tene to

dō cito

capito

audō to

3rd

ama to

tene to

dō cito

capito

audō to

Plur.

2nd

ama to te

tene to te

dō cito te

capito te

iacio, iacere, iactus

throw

facio, facere, factus

make

venio, venire, ventus

come

14. Identify the following forms according to person, number, tense, voice and mood. Do not translate. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. ambulamus

2. ambuletis

3. ambulabat

4. impleatur

5. implebunt

6. impleatis

50

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

7. pelleas

8. pellatis

9. pellitis

10. ducam

11. ducearis

12. venōreās

13. duāceāre

14. duācere

15. iaciaāris

16. iacite

17. fac

18. doānaābor

19. deāleābimur

20. deāleābaāmur

21. iubeāboā

22. veniaāmus

23. doānaāminōā

24. pellaāminōā

25. dōāceābaās

26. habeābitis

27. pellite

28. iubeÅtoÅ

29. claÅmaÅmus

30. duÅceÅbaÅmur

31. iacere

32. gerereÅre

33. impleÅ

15. Translate the following forms.

1. dÅcit

2. iacieÅs

3. pellunt

4. faciam

5. deÅleÅbantur

6. dÅcimus

7. gerite

8. pelleÅris

9. duÅcere

10. venieÅbaÅtis

11. ambulat

12. impleÅbitur

13. facient

14. impleÅbaÅminõÅ

15. capiminõÅ

16. audõÅ

17. iubeÅtoÅ

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

51

18. habeÅs

19. gereÅtur

20. ambulaÅmus

16. Change the following forms from active to passive, retaining person, number, tense, and mood.

1. dõÅcit

2. duĀcaĀmus

3. gereĀtis

4. duĀcite

5. pelleĀbam

6. iubeĀret

7. deĀleĀbis

8. cape

9. iacimus

10. audiam

17. Change the following forms from passive to active, retaining person, number, tense, and mood.

1. iubeor

2. gereĀbaĀmur

3. capiminōĀ

4. pelleĀtur

5. deĀleĀreĀre

6. impleÅberis

7. capere

8. dõÅcuntur

9. habeÅbaÅminõÅ

10. iacereÅmur

18. If the form is singular, change to plural; if it is plural, change to singular.

1. deÅlent

2. capiminõÅ

3. faciam

4. gereÅs

5. venieÅbaÅs

6. dõÅcar

7. pellereÅmus

8. impleÅbit

9. duÅceÅtis

10. habeÅberis

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Perfect System

In the perfect system, verbs of all conjugations behave the same. However, the active and passive voices are formed from different stems. Therefore, these systems will be treated separately.

PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM

The perfect active stem is the third principal part minus the ending -ō: amaſv-tenu-

dōx-

cep-

audōv-

All tenses of the perfect active system are formed from this stem, with no difference among the different conjugations.

Perfect Indicative Active

This tense has its own set of endings. These are added to the perfect active stem: Sing.

1st

-ō

cepō

2nd

-istō

cepistō

3rd

-it

cepit

Plur.

1st

-imus

cepimus

2nd

-istis

cepistis

3rd

-eÅrunt

ceÅpeÅrunt

cepistõÅ

you captured, you have captured

Pluperfect Indicative Active

This tense is formed by adding -eraÅ- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

ceÅperam

I had loved

ceÅperaÅs

you had loved

ceÅperat

he, she, it had loved

ceÅperaÅmus

we had loved

ceÅperaÅtis

you (pl.) had loved

ceÅperant

they had loved

Note: The 1st-person singular uses the ending -m.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

53

Future Perfect Indicative Active

This tense is formed by adding -eri- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

ceÅperoÅ

I will have loved

ceÅperis

you will have loved

ceÅperit

he, she, it will have loved

ceÅperimus

we will have loved

ceÅperitis

you (pl.) will have loved

ceÅperint

they will have loved

Note: The 1st-person singular uses the ending -oÅ. (The i of -eri disappears before it.)

Perfect Subjunctive Active

This tense is formed by adding -eri- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

ceÅperim

ceÅperis

ceÅperit

Subjunctives should not be translated in

ceÅperimus

isolation.

ceÅperitis

ceÅperint

Note: The 1st-person singular uses the ending -m.

Apart from the 1st-person singular, this tense is identical to the future perfect indicative. Grammatical conditions should enable you to tell them apart.

Pluperfect Subjunctive Active

This tense is formed by adding -isseÅ- to the perfect active stem, followed by the active personal endings:

ceÅpissim

ceÅpisseÅs

ceÅpisset

Subjunctives should not be translated in

ceÅpisseÅmus

isolation.

ceÅpisseÅtis

ceÅpissent

Syncopation

Verbs whose third principal part ends in -vō may sometimes be shortened by eliminating -vi or -ve before endings. For example: 54

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

audō → astō

instead of

audō → vistō

audie → runt

audō → verunt

audō → se

audō → visse

ama → runt

ama → ve → runt

This phenomenon is known as syncopation.³

Exercises

19. Identify the following forms according to person, number, tense, voice, and mood. Do not translate. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. dō → xero

2. ama → visse → mus

3. de → le → verit

4. fe → cerim

5. habuistō

6. du → xe → runt

7. du → xerant

8. du → xerint

9. veŃnistis

10. tenuisset

20. Translate the following forms.

1. impleŃveraŃtis

2. feŃceroŃ

3. veŃnistōŃ

4. amaŃvōŃ

5. ieŃceritis

6. ieŃceraŃtis

7. ieŃcistis

8. pepuleŃrunt

9. dōŃxōŃ

10. dōŃximus

PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM

The stem for the perfect passive system is the fourth principal part. It works alongside different tenses of the verb 'to be,' *Ńsum, esse, fuōŃ, futuŃrusŃto* to generate the tenses of this system. It is the form of *sum* that will determine tense and mood. (For the conjugation of this verb, see p. 67) Because the fourth principal part is a participle, that is, a verbal adjective, it must agree in gender, number, and case with its subject.

3 The word means a cutting or contraction.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

55

Perfect Indicative Passive

This tense uses the present indicative of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um sum

I was led, I have been led

ductus, -a, -um es

you were led, you have been led

ductus, -a, -um est

he, she, it was led=has been led

ductō, -ae, -a sumus

we were led, we have been led

ductō, -ae, -a estis

you (pl.) were led, you (pl.) have been

led

ductō, -ae, -a sunt

they were led, they have been led

Pluperfect Indicative Passive

This tense uses the imperfect indicative of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um eram

I had been led

ductus, -a, -um eras

you had been led

ductus, -a, -um erat

he, she, it had been led

ductō, -ae, -a eramus

we had been led

ductō, -ae, -a eratis

you (pl.) had been led

ductō, -ae, -a erant

they had been led

Future Perfect Indicative Passive

This tense uses the future indicative of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um ero

I will have been led

ductus, -a, -um eris

you will have been led

ductus, -a, -um erit

he, she, it will have been led

ductus, -a, -um erimus

we will have been led

ductus, -a, -um eritis

you (pl.) will have been led

ductus, -a, -um erunt

they will have been led

Perfect Subjunctive Passive

This tense uses the present subjunctive of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um sim

ductus, -a, -um sim

ductus, -a, -um sis

ductus, -a, -um simus

Subjunctives should not be translated in

ductus, -a, -um simus

isolation.

ductus, -a, -um sint

Note: In the passive system the future perfect indicative and perfect subjunctive do not resemble each other.

56

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive

This tense uses the imperfect subjunctive of sum with the perfect passive participle: ductus, -a, -um essem

ductus, -a, -um essem

ductus, -a, -um esset

ductus, -a, -um essemus

Subjunctives should not be translated in

ductō, -ae, -a esse

isolation.

ductō, -ae, -a essent

Exercises

21. Identify the following forms according to person, number, tense, voice, and mood. Do not translate. (If there is more than one possibility, give all.)

1. impletum est

2. impleta erat

3. impleta sunt

4. pulsus sum

5. iussus sumus

6. audita esse

7. delectata erunt

8. delectata sint

9. auditum esset _____

10. pulsae erant

22. Translate the following forms. Remember to acknowledge the gender of the subject.

1. impleÅtum est

2. impleÅta erat

3. iussõÅ sumus

4. deÅleÅta erunt

5. pulsae erant

6. iactum erit

7. captõÅ erant

8. capta est

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

57

9. amaÅti erunt

10. amaÅtus eram

23. Change the following forms from active to passive, retaining person, number, tense, and mood. Do not translate.

1. ceÅperis

2. ceÅperim

3. deÅleÅvistis

4. ieÅceraÅmus

5. pepulisset

6. impleÅvit

7. impleÅverit

8. impleÅverat

9. impleÅvisseÅmus _____

10. duÅxeÅrunt

24. Change the following forms from passive to active, retaining person, number, tense, and mood. Do not translate.

1. ductõÅ esseÅtis

2. capta erat

3. captae sumus _____

4. captus eroÅ

5. ductus sit

6. deÅleÅtum erit

7. deÅleÅtõÅ sunt

8. de Aleatae erant

9. de Aleata erunt

10. de Aleatus esset

25. Identify and translate the following forms.

1. ama Ave Arunt

2. ducto erunt

3. ambula verit

4. iussit

5. iussus est

6. de Aleatum erat

7. de Ale vera mus

8. imple vistic

9. pepulera tis

10. ce peritis

11. ambula ba s

12. pellam

13. implebitis

58

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

14. pellent

15. pellearis

16. pelleare

17. duccimino

18. ducebaamino

19. ducentur

20. implemur

21. implebatur

22. implebunt

23. implebuntur

24. delectabo

25. capiebare

26. cape

27. capere

28. iacit

29. iacent

30. iacieĀtur

31. iactae sunt

32. ieĀceritis

33. iacieĀbaĀtur

34. iactae erant

26. Identify person, number, tense, and voice for the following subjunctive forms. Do not translate.

1. ceĀperim

2. capiaĀminōĀ

3. ceĀpisseĀtis

4. captōĀ esseĀtis

5. capereĀre

6. audōĀtum sit

7. audō

8. audia

9. pepuleritis

10. audō

11. habe

12. tenea

13. tentae sint

14. tene

15. gerat

16. ambule

17. ama

18. ama

19. ama

20. ama

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

59

Verbal Nouns

INFINITIVES

Infinitives are so called because they lack the finite characteristics of person and number. They do, however, show tense and voice.

Present Active Infinitive

This is the second principal part:

amare

to love

habere

to have

dicere

to say

capere

to capture

audire

to hear

Present Passive Infinitive

For the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the present passive infinitive is formed from the active infinitive by changing the final -e to -i: amari

to be loved

haberi

to be had

audiri

to be heard

For the third conjugation, the entire -ere ending is changed to -i: dici

to be said

capri

to be captured

Perfect Active Infinitive

The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding the ending -isse to the perfect active stem:

amavisse

to have loved

ceŒpisse

to have captured

Note: It is actually the perfect infinitive that is the stem of the pluperfect subjunctive active.

Perfect Passive Infinitive

The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding the present infinitive of sum to the fourth principal part:

60

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

amaŒtus, -a, -um esse

to have been loved

captus, -a, -um esse

to have been captured

Future Active Infinitive

The future active infinitive is formed by adding the present infinitive of sum to the future active participle:

amaŒtuŒrus, -a, -um esse

to be about to love

captuŒrus, -a, -um esse

to be about to capture

Future Passive Infinitive

The future passive infinitive is formed by adding the supine to the passive infinitive of eoŒ:

amaŒtum ŒrŒ

captum ŒrŒ

This form is used very rarely. It has been omitted from the exercises.

Exercise

27. Identify and translate the following forms.

1. habuisse

2. agŒ

3. aŒctus, -a, -um esse

4. iacere

5. de Æle Ær Æ

6. de Æle Ætu Ærus, -a, -um esse

7. de Æle Ævisse

SUPINE

The supine is a verbal noun existing only in the accusative and ablative cases. It is formed as a fourth-declension noun from the fourth principal part: Acc.

captum

dictum

factum

Abl.

captu Æ

dictu Æ

factu Æ

GERUND

The gerund supplements the infinitive for complete declension of the verbal noun. It has no nominative case:

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

61

Gen.

amand Æ

capiend Æ

Dat.

amando Æ

capiendo Æ

Acc.

amandum

capiendum

Abl.

amando

capiendo

amandō

of loving

Participles

Participles are verbal adjectives. As verbs they show tense (present, perfect, and future) and voice (active and passive). As adjectives they decline and can modify nouns or act as substantives.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The present active participle is a third-declension adjective of one termination, formed from the present stem:

amans, amantis

loving

tens, tenentis

having

dicens, dicentis

telling

capiens, capientis

capturing

audiens, audientis

hearing

Here is the full declension:

Singular

Plural

Masc.=fem.

Neuter

Masc.=fem.

Neuter

Nom.

dicens

dicens

dicens

dōĀcentia

Gen.

dōĀcentis

dōĀcentium

Dat.

dōĀcentōĀ

dōĀcentibus

Acc.

dōĀcentem

dōĀceĀns

dōĀcenteĀs

dōĀcentia

Abl.

dōĀcentōĀ(-e)

dōĀcentibus

Note: The ablative singular ending is -ōĀ when the participle functions as an adjective modifying a noun. The ending is -e when the participle acts as a substantive or is the predicate in an ablative absolute. (See p. 94.) There is no present passive participle or perfect active participle in Latin.

62

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part; it declines like a 1st-second-declension adjective.

amaĀtus, -a, -um

(having been) loved

dictus, -a, -um

(having been) said

captus, -a, -um

(having been) captured

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The future active participle is formed by adding the ending -uĀrus, -a, -um to the stem of the fourth principal part. It declines like a 1st-second-declension adjective.

amaĀtuĀrus, -a, -um

about to love

dicturus, -a, -um

about to say

capturus, -a, -um

about to capture

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

The future passive participle is formed by adding the ending -ndus, -a, -um to the present stem. It declines like a first-second-declension adjective. Its meaning contains an idea of obligation or necessity.

amandus, -a, -um

having to be loved

dicendus, -a, -um

having to be said

capiendus, -a, -um

having to be captured

Exercise

28. Translate the following.

1. capiendus

2. menses capiendus

3. menses urbem capiendus

4. menses urbem capturus

5. captus

6. urbs capta

7. urbs ante menses capta

8. urbs a mōlite capientō capta

9. urbs a mōlite aliquid dictuā capta _____

PERIPHRASTICS

The future participle may be combined with the verb sum to form what are called periphrastics. They may appear in any tense.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

63

Active Periphrastic

The active periphrastic is so called because it uses the future active participle: captūrus sum

I am about to capture

captūrus eram

I was about to capture

Passive Periphrastic

The passive periphrastic is so called because it uses the future passive participle: capiendus est

He must be captured

capienda erat

She had to be captured

capiendō erunt

They will have to be captured

Exercise

29. Translate:

1. urbs de Alenda est

2. urbes de Alendae erant

3. urbes de Alendae erunt

4. virō urbem de Aleatūrō sunt

5. virō urbem deleatū erant

6. virō urbem deleatū erunt _____

Deponent Verbs

Deponent verbs are a class of verbs in Latin that, for the most part, use passive forms but have active meanings.⁴

Their principal parts are passive and three in number, functioning just as the principal parts of ordinary verbs. That is, they provide the stems for the entire conjugation of the verb.

Here are some example deponent verbs:

1st

mōrōr, mōrōrō, mōrōtus sum

admire

2nd

fateor, fateorō, fassus sum

confess

3rd

sequor, sequorō, secuatus sum

follow

3rd i-stem

patior, patiorō, passus sum

suffer

4th

partior, partiorō, partitus sum

share

The first principal part is the first-person singular, present indicative passive (but active in meaning):

patior

I suffer

⁴ They are called deponent because they have "deposed" or put aside their active forms.

64

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

The second principal part is the present infinitive passive (but active in meaning): fateorō

to confess

sequō

to follow

Note: As in the case of nondeponent verbs, the second principal part shows what conjugation a verb belongs to. Likewise the first principal part will show which verbs in the third conjugation are i-stem and which are not. For example, sequor and patior are both third conjugation. The i in patior shows that it is i-stem.

The third principal part is the first-person singular, perfect indicative passive (but active in meaning):

passus sum

I have suffered, I suffered

fassus est

he confessed

secutus sumus

we had followed

Deponents show all the moods and tenses of nondeponent verbs and form them regularly in the passive system. However, they do have some peculiarities.

PARTICIPLES

Though existing in the passive system, deponents do have present and future active participles that are active in both form and meaning.

Present Active

mirans, mirantis

admiring

patiens, patientis

suffering

partiens, partientis

sharing

Future Active

miraturus, -a, -um

about to admire

passurus, -a, -um

about to suffer

secutusurus, -a, -um

about to follow

Note: This means that deponents can form future active infinitives and active periphrastics.

secutus, -a, -um esse

to be about to follow

secutus est

he is about to follow

Perfect

Because their passive forms are active in meaning, practically speaking, deponents have a perfect active participle:

secutus, -a, -um

having admired

secutus, -a, -um

having followed

passus, -a, -um

having suffered

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

65

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive, you will recall, is formed from the present active infinitive for both the active and passive.

Deponents have no present active infinitive, but they form the imperfect subjunctive as if one existed. For example, working backward from secutus, a

first-conjugation passive infinitive, the active would be secutus. From secutus, a third-conjugation passive infinitive, it would be sequere. Though these forms do not actually exist independently, they act as stems for the formation of the imperfect subjunctive.

secutus

sequeretur

secutus (-re)

sequeretur (-re)

secutus

sequeretur

secutus

sequeretur

secutus

sequere

sequerentur

sequerentur

Exercises

If necessary, refer to the following list of deponents for the exercises: conor, conar, conatus sum
try, attempt

labor, labor, lapsus sum

slip, fall

vereor, vereor, veritus sum

fear

loquor, loquor, locutus sum

speak

utor, uter, usus sum

use

mori, mori, mortuus sum

die

potior, potior, potius sum

gain possession of

30. Translate the following forms.

1. lapsae erant

2. loquebamur

3. utere

4. utebamur

5. moriturus sum _____

6. verebamur

7. vereÅbiminõÅ

8. lapsi eritis

9. coÅnaÅberis

10. potiendum est _____

11. loquuntur

12. uÅtitur

66

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

31. Identify the following forms.

1. coÅneÅtur

2. uÅtereÅminõÅ

3. lapsõÅ sint

4. loquaÅmur

5. moriaÅris

6. verita essem

7. uÅtaÅmur

8. uÅteÅmur

9. uÅtimur

10. uÅtiminõÅ

Semi-Deponent Verbs

A few verbs are deponent only in the perfect system. This is indicated by their principal parts, which are active for the present system but passive for the perfect: audeoÅ, audeÅre, ausus sum

dare

soleoÅ, soleÅre, solitus sum

be accustomed to

gaudeoÅ, gaudeÅre, gavõÅsus sum

be happy

fõÅdoÅ, fõÅdere, fõÅsus sum

trust

This means that in the present they use normal active forms and in the perfect they use passive forms, both with active meanings:

loquõÅ audeoÅ

I dare to speak

loquõÅ ausus sum

I dared to speak

Impersonal Verbs

There are some verbs in Latin that occur only in the third-person singular and the inÅnitive, without subjects. For this reason they are called impersonal; that is, they do not take personal subjects. Their principal parts reflect this, being third-person and inÅnitive forms:

piget, pigeÅre, piguit

to disgust

pu-det, pudeÅre, pudit

to cause shame

paenitet, paeniteÅre, paenituit

to cause repentance

taedet, taedeÅre, taedit

to weary

licet, liceŕe, licuit

to be permitted

oportet, oporteŕe, oportuit

to be proper

interest, interesse

to be of interest

reŕfert, reŕferre

to be of concern

For the uses of these verbs see pp. 167±168.

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

67

Some Irregular Verbs

Following are the most common irregular verbs in Latin.

sum, esse, fuŕŕe, futuŕus

be

Present

Imperfect

Future

Present

indicative

indicative

indicative

subjunctive

Sing.

1st

sum

eram

eroŕ

sim

2nd

es

erās

eris

sōās

3rd

est

erat

erit

sit

Plur.

1st

sumus

erāmus

erimus

sōāmus

2nd

estis

erātis

eritis

sōātis

3rd

sunt

erant

erunt

sint

Note: The fourth principal part is the future active participle. This verb does not (and could not) have a passive system.

Sum has no present or perfect participles. It is regular in the imperfect subjunctive and the entire perfect system.

The future infinitive of sum is futūrum esse. However, in addition to this form there is the alternate fore. This form is also often used as the stem for the imperfect subjunctive, particularly for the third-person singular form foret.

possum, posse, potuō, . . .

be able

Present

Imperfect

Future

Present

indicative

indicative

indicative

subjunctive

Sing.

1st

possum

poteram

potero

possim

2nd

potes

potera

poteris

possō

3rd

potest

poterat

poterit

possit

Plur.

1st

possumus

poteramus

poterimus

possōmus

2nd

potestis

poterātis

poteritis

possōtis

3rd

possunt

poterant

poterunt

possint

This verb is compounded from sum. Before forms of sum beginning with the letter s, it prexes pos-. Before forms beginning with the letter e, it prexes pot-.

It forms the perfect regularly from its own stem potu-.

eo, ēre, iō=ōvō, itus

to go

Present

Imperfect

Future

Present

indicative

indicative

indicative

subjunctive

Sing.

1st

eo

ēbam

ēbo

eam

2nd

ōÅs

ōÅbaÅs

ōÅbis

eaÅs

3rd

it

ōÅbat

ōÅbit

eat

68

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

Plur.

1st

ōÅmus

ōÅbaÅmus

ōÅbimus

eaÅmus

2nd

ōÅtis

ōÅbaÅtis

ōÅbitis

eaÅtis

3rd

eunt

ōÅbant

ōÅbunt

eant

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

ieÅns, euntis

The rest of its conjugation is regular.

volō, velle, voluō

wish, be willing

nolo, nolle, nolū

be unwilling

maolo, maolle, maoluō

want more, prefer

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Sing.

1st

volō

nolo

maolo

2nd

vōs

noān vōs

maāvōs

3rd

vult

noān vult

maāvult

Plur.

1st

volumus

noālumus

maālumus

2nd

vultis

noān vultis

maāvultis

3rd

volunt

noÅlunt

maÅlunt

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

Sing.

1st

voleÅbam

noÅleÅbam

maÅleÅbam

2nd

voleÅbaÅs

noÅleÅbaÅs

maÅleÅbaÅs

3rd

voleÅbat

noÅleÅbat

maÅleÅbat

Plur.

1st

voleÅbaÅmus

noÅleÅbaÅmus

maÅleÅbaÅmus

2nd

voleÅbaÅtis

noÅleÅbaÅtis

maÅleÅbaÅtis

3rd

voleÅbant

noÅleÅbant

maÅleÅbant

FUTURE INDICATIVE

Sing.

1st

volam

noŃlam

maŃlam

2nd

voleŃs

noŃleŃs

maŃleŃs

3rd

volet

noŃlet

maŃlet

Plur.

1st

2nd

etc. (as regular third conjugation)

3rd

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

69

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Sing.

1st

velim

noŃlim

maŃlim

2nd

veloŃs

noŃloŃs

maÅlõÅs

3rd

velit

noÅlit

maÅlit

Plur.

1st

velõÅmus

noÅlõÅmus

maÅlõÅmus

2nd

velõÅtis

noÅlõÅtis

maÅlõÅtis

3rd

velint

noÅlint

maÅlint

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

voleÅns, volentis

noÅleÅns, noÅlentis

maÅloÅ has no present participle

These verbs are regular in the imperfect subjunctive and the perfect system.

feroÅ, ferre, tulõÅ, latus

bear, carry

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Active

Passive

Sing.

1st

fero

feror

2nd

fers

ferris, ferre

3rd

fert

fertur

Plur.

1st

ferimus

ferimur

2nd

fertis

ferimini

3rd

ferunt

feruntur

IMPERATIVE

Sing.

fer

Pl.

ferite

Otherwise, *fero* acts as a regular third conjugation verb.

feror, *ferer*, *factus sum*

be done, be made, happen

This verb is used as the passive for the present system of the verb.

facio, *facere*, *factus*

70

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

It has active forms with passive meanings and conjugates as a regular i-stem third-conjugation verb. Note that it has a long -ō- in the stem: Present

Imperfect

Future

Present

indicative

indicative

indicative

subjunctive

Sing.

1st

fōō

fōōbam

fōōam

fōōam

2nd

fōōs

fōōbas

fōōas

fōōas

3rd

ōt

fōōbat

fōōet

fōōat

Plur.

1st

fōōmus

fōōbamus

fōōamus

fōōamus

2nd

fōÅtis

fōÅeÅbaÅtis

fōÅeÅtis

fōÅaÅtis

3rd

fōÅunt

fōÅeÅbant

fōÅent

fōÅant

oÅdōÅ, oÅdisse

hate

As the principal parts indicate, this verb exists only in the perfect tense. However in the perfect it has present meaning.

oÅdistōÅ

you hate

Its pluperfect tense acts as a simple past and its future perfect as a simple future: oÅderam

I hated

oÅderit

he will hate

Because this verb lacks a present system, it is called a defective verb.

Exercise

32. Translate the following forms:

1. erimus

2. noÅlunt

3. poteritis

4. possunt

5. vultis

6. õÅbit

7. fers

8. fõÅmus

9. ferris

10. maÅvultis

11. noÅlumus

12. õÅbam

13. poteraÅs

14. estis

15. noÅlle

16. ®erõÅ

17. feriminõÅ

18. õÅs

19. volam

CHAPTER 4 The Verb

71

20. maÅlunt

21. noÅluit

22. ferre

23. ieÅns

24. potestis

25. posse

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 5

Adverbs and

Prepositions

Adverbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. They answer questions such as How? Where? When?

He wept bitterly.

The adverb bitterly modifies the verb wept and tells us how he wept.

I am extremely fat.

The adverb extremely modifies the adjective fat and tells us how fat I am.

Adverbs are formed from adjectives in one of two different ways. First-second-declension adjectives form adverbs by adding the ending -eÅ to the stem: amõÅceÅ

in a friendly manner

misereÅ

wretchedly

Third-declension adjectives form adverbs by adding the ending -iter to the stem: fortiter

bravely

adacriter

sharply

Sometimes the neuter accusative singular of an adjective will serve as an adverb: multum

much

facile

easily

73

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

74

CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions

The comparative degree of the adverb is supplied by the neuter accusative singular of the comparative adjective:

adacriter

sharply

adacrius

more sharply

misere

wretchedly

miserius

more wretchedly

The superlative degree of the adverb is formed as the adverb of a regular first-second-declension adjective, with the ending -issime

fortissime

most bravely

adacerrime

most sharply

Some common adverbs are irregular in all degrees:

bene

well

melius

better

optime

best

male

badly

peius

worse

pessime

worst

parum

too little

minus

less

minime

least

multum

much

plu

more

maxime

most greatly

Exercise

1. Generate the appropriate adverb in the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees for the following adjectives:

Positive

Comparative

Superlative

1. nobilis

2. acerbus

3. miser

4. malus

5. bonus

Prepositions

Prepositions are words placed before nouns to create phrases that express adverbial meanings. They answer questions such as Where? Why? How? When?

The pig slept under the table.

The preposition under combines with the noun table to tell us where the pig slept.

Prepositions in Latin take the accusative or the ablative case. Some may take both.

CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions

75

COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

ad

to, toward

They set out toward Asia

ad Asiam pro@ciscuntur

for,1 with a view to

ad pacem

for peace

ante

before (in space or time)

ante oppidum

before the town

ante bellum

before the war

apud

at, near

apud Rheānum

at the Rhine

at the house of

ceĀnaĀbis bene apud meĀ

you will dine well at my house

circum

around

circum castra

around the camp

contraĀ

against

contraĀ illum dōĀcoĀ

I speak against that man

inter

among

inter mortuoĀs

among the dead

between

inter meam opōĀnioĀnem

ac tuam

between my opinion and yours

ob

on account of, because of

ob metum

because of fear

per

through (in different senses)

multa per aequora

vectus

conveyed through many seas

nihil per iram actum est

nothing was done through

anger

post

behind

post montem

behind the mountain

after post mortem

after death

praeter

beyond

praeter insulas

beyond the islands

praeter spem

beyond expectation

propter

on account of

propter amorem

on account of love

trans

acrosstrans rivum

across the river

1 `For" in the sense of purpose (i.e., "I did it `for money" , not in the sense of "a gift `for you."

76

CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions

COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE CASE

aÅ, ab2

away from

aÅ BritanniaÅ

away from Britain

by3 interfectus est aÅ Caesare

he was killed by Caesar

cum

with cum amõÅcõÅs

with friends

Personal, relative, and interrogative pronouns attach to the end of this word:

meÅcum

with me

quibuscum?

with whom?

deÅ

down from

deÅ montibus

down from the mountains

concerning

deÅ animaÅ

concerning the soul

eÅ, ex4

out ofeÅ proÅvinciaÅ ire

to go out of the province

proÅ

for, on behalf of

pro amōco meo

on behalf of my friend

sine

without

sine pugna et sine vulnere

without a fight and without

injury

PREPOSITIONS THAT TAKE BOTH ACCUSATIVE AND

ABLATIVE CASES

in

accinto

in Asiam obit

he will go into Asia

against

oratio in Catilōnam

a speech against Catiline

ablin, on

in Asia est

he is in Asia

in tanta maestitia fuisse

to have been in such great sadness

2 Generally, the form ab is used before a word beginning with a vowel, and a before a word beginning with a consonant.

3 In the sense of an action performed 'by' a person. This kind of prepositional phrase usually occurs with verbs in the passive voice and constitutes the ablative of personal agent. See p. 92.

4 Generally the form ex is used before a word beginning with a vowel, and e before a word beginning with a consonant.

CHAPTER 5 Adverbs and Prepositions

77

sub

accunder (implying motion)

sub portam venient

they will come beneath the gate

ablunder (stationary)

quidquid sub terra est

whatever is beneath the earth

Exercise

2. Translate the following phrases:

1. sub luna

2. post bellum

3. apud regem

4. circum urbem

5. per agros

6. sine amore

7. ex aqua

8. cum avartia

9. de montibus

10. contra mōlites

11. ob pecuniam

12. pro rege

13. trans mare

14. ante diem

15. a poeÅta

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 6

Syntax of the Noun

Nominative Case

SUBJECT

The nominative case is the case for the subject of a sentence: PoeÅta vincit.

The poet conquers.

PoeÅta is in the nominative case because it is the subject of this sentence.

Any adjective used to modify this subject must agree with it in gender and number, as well as case.

PoeÅta miser vincit.

The wretched poet conquers.

Miser is masculine nominative singular to agree with poeÅta.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

The nominative case is also used in the following manner: PoeÅta est miser.

The poet is wretched.

or

PoeÅta est servus.

The poet is a slave.

In these sentences poeÅta is still the subject. The function of the sentence is to make a statement about this subject, saying essentially 'X = Y,' with the verb acting as an equal sign.

PoeÅta

est

miser

X

5

Y

79

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

80

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

This Y is called a predicate, and it agrees in case with the subject. Therefore, in the sentences on page 79, miser and servus are called predicate nominatives.

Genitive Case

The genitive case has many meanings in common with the English preposition of.

For example:

poeÅta amoÅris.

a poet of love.

amor pecuÅniae.

love of money.

A noun in the genitive case usually follows another noun and gives information about it. Above, amoÅris tells us something about what kind of poet she is, pecuÅniae about what kind of love it is. In other words, the genitive case functions like an adjective.

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

terra reÅgis

the land of the king

This genitive shows possession or ownership.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE

numerus viroÅrum

a number of men

lõÅbra aurõÅ

a pound of gold

The partitive genitive expresses the whole from which a part has come. This genitive is often found with superlatives:

Ille vir est optimus poeÅtarum

That man is the best of the poets

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

amor pecuÅniae

love of money

nex animaĀlium

slaughter of animals

The objective genitive follows a noun that has a verbal idea in its meaning.

amor

amoĀ, amaĀre

to love

nex

necoĀ, necaĀre

to kill

The use of genitive then corresponds to the direct object of the verbal idea contained in that noun:

to love money

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

81

In the phrase amor pecuĀniae, the genitive "of money" represents the direct object of the verbal idea of 'love.' Therefore, it is called an objective genitive.

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

amor maĀtris

the love of a mother

adventus naĀvis

the arrival of the ship

Like the objective genitive, the subjective genitive follows a noun with a verbal idea in its meaning, e.g., 'to love,' 'to arrive.' This genitive corresponds to the subject of that verbal idea:

The mother loves.

The ship arrives.

Therefore, it is called a subjective genitive.

GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC, OR PREDICATE GENITIVE

Hominum est pecuĀniam amaĀre

It is characteristic of men to love money

This genitive is almost always used in sentences of this kind, often with an infinitive as the subject, saying that a certain type of action is 'characteristic of' someone or something. Such a sentence has the form X Y, i.e., Pecūniam amāre

est

hominum

X

5

Y

The genitive functions as the predicate, and so this type of construction is also called a predicate genitive.

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

vir magnae avaritiae

a man of great avarice

This genitive together with an adjective makes a phrase that describes another noun.

GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE

Illud consilium magnae aestimo.

I reckon that advice of great (value).

As the name suggests, this genitive is used to make an unspecified judgment of value.

82

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

Certain verbs, such as some impersonal verbs (see p. 167) and those denoting remembering or forgetting, take the genitive case.

Pecunia taedet poetam.

The poet feels disgust of money.

Oblivisca bellorum.

Let us be forgetful of wars.

These should be learned as a matter of vocabulary with such verbs.

Exercises

1. Translate the following. Then identify the case and usage of the italicized word(s).

1. Puer est *filius* nautae.

2. *Avaritia* est amor pecuniae.

3. Gaudium *amicorum* est magnum.

4. Gaudium magnum amōcōrū audio.

5. gladius fōlīae

6. spōritus deō

7. dolor servoꝝ caecoꝝ

8. Fōlīoꝝ est patreꝝ amaꝝ.

9. animal cornuum magnoꝝ

10. cornua animaꝝ

11. Illam reꝝgōnam nihilō aestimo.

2. Translate the following sentences.

1. Ut igitur in seꝝminibus est causa arboꝝ et stirpium, sōc huius luctuoꝝsissimōꝝ bellōꝝ tuꝝ seꝝmen fuistōꝝ.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

83

2. Ut Helena Troꝝianōꝝ sic iste huic reꝝ puꝝblicae bellōꝝ causa, causa pestis atque exitōꝝ fuit.

3. Et non amen pacis dulce est et ipsa res salutaria; sed inter pacem et servitum plurimum interest. Pax est tranquilla libertas, servitus postremum malorum omnium, non modo bello sed morte etiam repellendum.

4. Maximus videri numerus fuit, permagnum optimum pondus argentum. . .
Horum paucis diebus nihil erat.

5. Non minus est imperatoris consilio superare quam gladio.

6. Incurandiam facit libertatem servitutis recordatio.

7. Non putat tua dona esse tantum.

Vocabulary

ut

just as

igitur (adv.)

therefore

semen, seminis, n.

seed

arbor, -oris, m.

tree

stirps, stirpis, -ium, f.

plant

stirps

so

luctuosus, -a, -um

distressing, grievous

Helena, -ae, f.

Helen

Trojanus, -a, -um

Trojan

pestis, pestis, f.

destruction, pestilence

nomen, nomina, n.

name

84

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

pax, pacis, f.

peace

dulcis, -e

sweet

salutaris, -e

beneficial, healthful

servitus, -utis, f.

slavery

tranquillus, -a, -um

peaceful, tranquil

libertas, -tatis, f.

freedom

postremus, -a, -um

most extreme

noñ modo

not only

sed etiam

but also

mors, mortis, f.

death

repelloñ, repellere

repel

numerus, -ñ, m.

number, amount

vñnum, -ñ, n.

wine

pondus, ponderis, n.

weight, quantity

argentum, -ñ, n.

silver

paucñ, -ae, -a

few

imperañtor, -oñris, m.

commander

coñsilium, -ñ, n.

advice, planning

gladius, -ñ, m.

sword

iuñcundus, -a, -um

pleasing

recordañtioñ, -oñnis, f.

recollection, memory

lñbertañs, -tañtis, f.

liberty

servitū, -tū, f.

slavery

puto, putare

think

tantus, -a, -um

so great

Dative Case

The dative case can often be translated by the English prepositions to and for.

Aqua est bona pueris.

Water is good for children.

Almost always you will find nouns that denote people in the dative case; these are the people "to" or "for" whom the information in the rest of the sentence is important.

INDIRECT OBJECT

The dative is used to express the indirect object of a sentence.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

85

Librum poetae dedi.

I gave a book to the poet.

Pecuniam tibi monstrabo.

I will show the money to you.

DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR

This dative is used in a complete sentence to say that something belongs "to someone."

Regi sunt multa animalia.

To the king there are many animals.

or

The king has many animals.

PREDICATE DATIVE

This is an old and interesting use of the dative that does not much resemble its other uses.

Illa terra erit magno usu.

Some suggested translations have been:

That land will be of great use.'

à source of great use.'

``for the purpose of great use.'

The sentence has the form of an equation in which the dative acts as the predicate: Illa terra

erit

magnoÂ usuõÂ

X

5

Y

Ventus est magnae cuÂrae.

The wind is a great concern.

This usage is often accompanied by another, more ordinary dative of reference to specify for whom the sentence is true:

NautõÂs ventus est magnae cuÂrae.

To the sailors the wind is a (source of)

great concern.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

Many compound verbs, that is, verbs with pre®xes attached to them, call for a referential dative:

RoÂmaÂnõÂ servituÂtem populõÂs

imposueÂrunt.

The Romans imposed slavery on the

peoples.

86

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

It is as if the pre®x is a preposition pointing to the dative.

MuÂrum urbõÂ circumposuit.

He put a wall around the city.

DATIVE WITH CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Certain intransitive verbs, that is, verbs that do not take direct objects, naturally take the dative case:

PoeÂtõÂs persuaÂdeÂmus abõÂre.

We persuade the poets to go away.

ReÂgõÂ noÂn creÂdoÂ.

I do not trust the king.

This dative should be learned as a matter of vocabulary with the verbs that take it.

DATIVE OF AGENT

This dative is used mostly with the passive periphrastic (see p. 63) *Urbs vincenda est mōlitibus.*

The city must be conquered by the
soldiers.

(Literally, 'For the soldiers it is necessary for the city to be conquered.') Exercises

3. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.

1. *Mihi* nō est gladius.

2. *Re* pecūniam mōlitibus dōnābat.

3. *Na*vis pōtis de lenda erat.

4. *Urbs* magnae luxūariae nō de lenda erat.

5. *Illa* aqua puerōs nocēbit.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

6. Undae magno periculo navibus sunt.

7. Exercitum montibus postposuit.

4. Translate the following sentences.

1. Parant ea quae usum sunt oppido.

2. Ille Romanae praeerat arcem.

3. Quam attulit ratio nem populo Romano?

4. Aliis consilium, alius animus, alius occasio defuit; voluntas ne minime.

5. Mortem servituti anteposimus.

Vocabulary

parare, parare, parare, parare

prepare

usus, -us, m.

use, advantage

praesum

to be in charge of

arx, arcis, f.

citadel

affero

bring to

ratio, -onis, f.

reason, reckoning

consilium, -ium, n.

advice, planning

ocasio, -onis, f.

opportunity

desum

to be lacking to (dative)

voluntas, -atis, f.

will, intention

nequam, nequamis

nobody

mors, mortis, f.

death

servitus, -utis, f.

slavery

antepono

place before, prefer

88

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

Accusative Case

DIRECT OBJECT

The accusative is used to express the direct object of a sentence.

Miles urbes urbem destruit.

The soldiers destroy the city.

Sometimes a verb that would not normally take a direct object, e.g., *eo*, to go, can take one naturally connected to its meaning.

iter iterum

to go a road

viam cedere

to go a road

Such a usage is called an internal or cognate accusative.

SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE OF AN INFINITIVE

Infinitives take subjects in the accusative case, most commonly in what is called indirect statement, that is, speech reported from another source. The grammar of this construction is explained in Chapter 8.

Dico viros in via ambulare.

I say that the men are walking in the
road.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF TIME OR SPACE

This is an adverbial usage, limiting the time or space occupied by an action.

Quinque annos laboraveram.

I had worked for five years.

Sex milia passuum processerunt.

They advanced six miles.

ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE

The neuter singular accusative of an adjective can function as an adverb.

Multum pecuniam amat.

You love money very much.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

The accusative, with or without prepositions, is used to express motion toward or against something.

Ad mare venimus.

We came to the sea.

in milite

against the soldiers

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

89

Prepositions are not used for the names of cities, towns, or islands, or the nouns domus and rus.

Romam ibo.

I will go to Rome.

Domum venimus.

We came home.

ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

Many other ideas are expressed by the accusative with different prepositions (see p. 75).

ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION

The accusative is used for exclamations:

O rem terribilem!

A terrible thing!

Exercises

5. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.

1. Pecunia amōcitiam delebit.

2. Totam noctem ambulāvō.

3. Viam difficilem nolimus ōre.

4. Romam feminae processerunt.

5. Dōco pecuniam amōcitiam deleare.

6. Dōcit viros clamare.

7. *Ava Aritia mentem re Agis de Ale Avit.*

90

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

8. *Multo As anno As ava Aritia mentem re Agis de Ale Abat.*

6. Translate the following sentences.

1. *Habet quidem certe As re As pu Ablica adolescento As no Abillissimo As para Ato As de Afenso Are As.*

2. *Hanc ve Aro A taeterrimam be Aluam quis ferre potest aut quo A modo A? Quid est in Anto Anio A praeter libo Adinem, cru Ade Alita Atem, petulantiam, auda A-*

ciam?

3. *Po Ane ante oculo As laetitiam sena Atu As populõ Aque Ro Ama Anõ A.*

4. *Bellum nefa Arium contra A a Ara As et foco As, contra A võ Atam fortu Ana Asque nostra As ab homine pro A õ A ga Ato A ac perditõ A no An compara Aro A sed gerõ A iam võ Aderam.*

5. At quam multo die in ea villa turpissime es perbacchatus!

6. O foeditatem hominis aagitiosam, o impudentiam, nequitiam, libidinem non ferendam!

Vocabulary

quidem (adv.)

indeed

certe (adv.)

certainly

adulescens, -ntis

young, youthful

paros, paros

prepare

defensor, -oris, m.

defender

vero

but

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

91

taeter, -tra, -trum

foul

bestia, -ae, f.

beast

quo modo

how?

Antōnīus, -ō, m.

Antonius

libōdo, -inis, f.

lust

cruēdeAlitās, -tās, f.

cruelty

petulantia, -ae, f.

arrogance

audācia, -ae, f.

outrageous boldness, audacity

laetitia, -ae, f.

happiness

senātus, -us, m.

senate

nefārius, -a, -um

evil, unspeakably criminal

ārā, -ae, f.

altar

focus, -ō, m.

hearth, replace

prōgātus, -a, -um

proigate

perditus, -a, -um

ruined, desperate

comparō, comparāre

prepare, get ready

at

but

villa, -ae, f.

villa

turpis, -e

foul

perbacchor (1st conjug.)

revel, have wild parties

foeditas, -tatis, f.

repulsiveness, baseness

inimicitia, -as, -a, -um

disgraceful

impudentia, -ae, f.

shamelessness

inimicitia, -ae, f.

worthlessness

Ablative Case

The ablative does many of the jobs of the English prepositions from, with, in, and by. They are many.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH (FROM)

Prepositions denoting ideas of separation take the ablative case: ex urbe

out of the city

de montibus

down from the mountains

ab aqua

away from the water

Names of cities, towns, and islands and the nouns domus and rus do not take prepositions to express this meaning.

92

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

Roma veniunt.

They came from Rome.

Rura veniunt.

They came from the country.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE (IN)

This ablative takes the preposition in.

in Asia

in Asia

in terris

in the lands

Names of cities, towns, and islands and the nouns domus and rus do not take the preposition in to express this meaning. They take the locative case (see p. 97).

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH (IN)

These ablatives situate an event in time.

illo die

on that day

eo tempore

at that time

Quaque die urbs capta est.

The city was captured within 9 days.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT (BY)

This ablative, without a preposition, expresses the means or instrument by which an action is performed.

Urbem gladiis vincunt.

They conquer the city with swords.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE (FROM)

This ablative, without a preposition, expresses the cause of an action.

Dolore clamat.

He shouts because of pain.

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT (BY)

This ablative, with the preposition a=ab, expresses the agent through whom an action in the passive voice has been performed.

Urbs a militibus vincta est.

The city was conquered by the soldiers.

Liber a poeta scribetur.

The book will be written by the poet.

Note: The soldiers and the poet are personal agents, that is, people. For nonpersonal agents, Latin uses the ablative of means: Urbs avaritia delecta est.

The city was destroyed by avarice.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

93

ABLATIVE OF MANNER (WITH)

This ablative, with the preposition *cum*, expresses the manner in which an action is performed.

Cum gaudio canebat.

He was singing with joy.

However, if the ablative noun is modified by an adjective, the preposition *cum* becomes optional:

Magno gaudio canebat.

Cum magno gaudio canebat.

He sang with great joy.

Magno cum gaudio canebat.

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION (FROM)

This ablative, like the ablative of place from which, expresses separation.

Te liberabo a metu.

I will free you from fear.

Vacui culpa non sunt mortui.

The dead are not free from blame.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (FROM)

This ablative is used with a comparative adjective (see p. 24) and without a preposition to express that to which something is being compared.

Amor durior est amicitia.

Love is harder than friendship.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE (BY)

This ablative is used with a comparative adjective to express, as the name suggests, the degree of difference in the comparison.

Amor multo durior est amicitia.

Love is harder than friendship by much.

Hic altior tribus pedibus est quam ille. This man is taller than that man by three feet.

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION (WITH)

A noun and adjective in the ablative case can describe another noun.

vir grandibus pedibus

a man with large feet

feÅmina magnaÅ sapientiaÅ

a woman of great wisdom

This usage is similar to the genitive of description (see p. 81).

1 Sometimes an adjective will move in front of a one-syllable preposition like this to give the expression a more pleasing and symmetrical form.

94

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

This ablative is used to specify or limit a statement.

IlloÅs virtuÅte praeceÅdimus.

We surpass those men in respect to

excellence.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

An ablative noun and participle or two ablative nouns or adjectives may be used in combination to create what is essentially a subordinate clause.

MõÅlitibus clamantibus, reÅx ad

With the soldiers shouting, the king

urbem ambulat.

walks toward the city.

MultõÅs urbibus aÅ reÅge captõÅs,

With many cities having been captured

by populus timeÅbat.

the king, the people were afraid.

ReÅge deÅmentõÅ, mõÅliteÅs timeÅbant.

With the king being crazy, the soldiers

were afraid.

(For a fuller treatment of this construction, see pp. 145±146.) ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

Many other ideas are expressed by the accusative with different prepositions (see p. 75).

Exercises

7. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.

1. Animal est grandius puero.

2. Anima alia a puero ducuntur.

3. Feaminae magna cura ad mare veniunt.

4. Feaminae Roma veniunt

5. Avaritia poetam expulisti.

6. Gladio poetam expulisti.

7. Poetas canentibus, domos non audiebant.

8. Illo anno multa bella in terra erant.

9. Rex multo de mentior est regina.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

95

10. Anima alia magnos cornibus timeo.

11. Timore ex urbe regina cucurrit.

8. Translate the following sentences:

1. Sunt enim optimo animo, summo consilio, singula concordia.

2. Hoc omnes lingua, instituta, legibus inter se differunt.

3. Sed Antōnius teneatur, premitur, urgeatur nunc eōs cōpiōs quaas iam habemus, mox eōs quaas paucōs diebus novō cōsuleas comparaabunt.

4. Quis enim hoc adolescente castior, quis modestior, quod in iuventute habemus illustrius exemplum veteris sanctitatis?

5. Attulerat iam ille liberæ cōvitatō partim metu partim patientiā consuetudinem serviendō. Cum illo ego te dominandō cupiditate conferre possum, ceterōs verō rebus nullo modo comparandus es.

6. His auctoribus et ducibus, dōs iuventibus, nobis vigilantibus et multum in posterum providentibus, populo Romano consentiente, erimus profectō liberō brevō tempore. Iucundiorē autem faciet libertatem servitutis recordatio.

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

Vocabulary

enim

for indeed

animus, -ō, m.

mind, spirit

summus, -a, -um

the highest, best

consilium, -i, n.

advice, planning

singularis, -e

remarkable, outstanding

concordia, -ae, f.

agreement

lingua, -ae, f.

tongue, language

institutum, -i, n.

custom, usage

lex, legis, f.

law

differo

differ

urgeo, urgeo

press upon

coepiae, -arum, f.

troops

mox (adv.)

soon

consul, -is, m.

consul

comparoÅ, comparaÅre

prepare, make ready

verbum, -õÅ, n.

word

appelloÅ, appellaÅre

call

castus, -a, -um

chaste

modestus, -a, -um

modest

iuventuÅs, -tuÅtis, f.

youth

illustris, -e

shining, illustrious

vetus, veteris

old, ancient

sanctitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.

moral purity, sanctity

cõÅvitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.

citizenry, state

partim (adv.)

partly

patientia, -ae, f.

patience, suffering

consuetuÅdoÅ, -tuÅdinis, f.

habit

servio, servō

to be a slave

cupō, cupita, -ta, f.

greed

dominor, domina, dominus

rule absolutely, dominate

confero

compare

auctor, -oris, m.

creator, producer

dux, ducis, m.

leader

iuvo, iuva

help, assist

vigilo, vigila

keep watch

in posterum

for the future

CHAPTER 6 Syntax of the Noun

97

pro, proinde

provide

consentio, consentō

be in agreement

profecto (adv.)

without question

brevis, -e

brief, short

iu, iucundus, -a, -um

pleasing

autem

moreover

recordatio, -onis, f.

recollection, memory

libertas, -tatis, f.

liberty

servitus, -tutis, f.

slavery

Locative Case

The locative case expresses location. It is an older case that, for the most part, has died out in the language but survives in the names of cities, towns, islands, and the nouns domus and rus.

Except for these instances, location is usually expressed by the ablative case without the preposition in.

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 7

Syntax of the

Adjective

The function of an adjective is to modify a noun. To do so, it must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case.

Generally, adjectives follow the nouns that they modify.

Poeta de mens magno gaudio lunam

The insane poet sees the cold moon with

great joy.

great joy.

Note that the adjective magno precedes its noun gaudio. This is commonly the case with adjectives denoting quantity rather than quality. For example, Latin will use multa pecunia rather than pecunia multa.

This is also the case with demonstrative and interrogative adjectives: quis vir?

what man?

ille vir

that man

Predicate Adjective

Sometimes an adjective is used in an equation or assertion. It must still agree with its noun.

Ventus est magnus.

The wind is great.

If a group of nouns is mixed masculine and feminine, the adjective will take the masculine.

Virō et feminae sunt miserō.

The men and women are wretched.

99

99

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

100

CHAPTER 7 Syntax of the Adjective

Substantive Adjective

Sometimes an adjective does not modify a noun but stands alone as if it were itself a noun. This is called the substantive use of the adjective.¹

Bonus ad mare ambulat.

The good man walks to the water.

It is translated on the basis of its gender and number, here masculine singular

hence the good man.

Bonae ad mare ambulat.

The good women walk to the water.

bonus, malus, et deformis

the good (man), the bad (man), and the

ugly (man)

Adverbial Use of the Adjective

Sometimes an adjective, rather than saying something general about a noun, will say something about that noun that is true only for the sentence in which it occurs. It seems to function more as an adverb.

Ille vir, cum hoc audīvit, sapie

That man, when he heard this, wisely

discessit.

departed.

Often such a usage will occur in the nominative case, modifying the subject, and often it will occur near the verb, i.e., in an adverbial position. Notice the difference: Sapie, cum hoc audīvit, discessit.

The wise man, when he heard this,

departed.

Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

The comparative or superlative degree of the adjective may be used alone as a strengthened form of the positive.

Pater est sapientior.

The father is very wise.

Pater est sapientissimus.

The father is extremely wise.

Comparative adjectives often occur with an ablative of comparison nearby (see p. 93).

Pater est sapientior fōliō.

The father is wiser than the son.

Comparative adjectives may also express a comparison using the adverb quam.

Pater est sapientior quam fōlius.

The father is wiser than the son (is).

1 `Substantive' is another term for noun.

CHAPTER 7 Syntax of the Adjective

101

When quam is used, both terms in the comparison must be in the same case: fōlius on page 100 is nominative to correspond with pater.

Dōco patrem sapientiorem esse

I say that the father is wiser than the

quam fōlium.

son.

Here fōlium is accusative, to correspond to patrem, itself the subject of an indirect statement.

Superlative adjectives often take a partitive genitive.

Pecunia est pessima omnium malorum. Money is the worst of all evil things.

Sometimes the superlative will occur with quam to express the adjective's meaning `as strongly as possible.'

Pater est quam sapientissimus.

The father is as wise as possible.

Exercises

1. Translate the following.

1. Malo pecuniam amant.

2. Multa pecunia est multo melior amo.

3. Multa pecunia est multo melior quam multus amor.

4. Aurum pulcherrimum omnium bonorum est.

5. Dico aquam esse quam pulcherrimam.

6. Poeta miser de avaritia Romanorum clamat.

7. Poeta de avaritia Romanorum miser clamat.

2. Translate the following.

1. Lucae sunt clariae nobis tua consilia omnia.

2. Hanc veterrimam belluam quis ferre potest?

3. Habet quidem certe reŕ puŕblica aduleŕŕcentŕ noŕbilissimoŕ paraŕtoŕ deŕfenŕŕreŕ.

4. Quis claŕioŕibus virŕŕ quoŕdam tempore iuŕcundior, quis turpioŕibus coniunctior? Quis cŕŕvis melioŕum partium aliquandoŕ, quis taetrior hostis huic cŕŕvitaŕtŕŕ? Quis in voluptaŕtibus inquinaŕtior, quis in laboŕibus patientior? Quis in rapaŕcitaŕte avaŕrior, quis in largŕŕtioŕne effuŕsior?

Vocabulary

lux, luŕcis, f.

light

claŕus, -a, -um

clear, bright

coŕŕsilium, -ŕŕ, n.

advice, planning

taeter, -tra, -trum

horrible, foul

beŕlua, -ae, f.

beast

quidem (adv.)

indeed

adulesceŕns, -ntis

young, youthful

parō, parāre

prepare

deŕfensor, -ōŕis, m.

defender

iucundus, -a, -um

pleasing

turpis, -e

foul

coniunctus, -a, um

conjoined

aliquando (adv.)

ever, at any time

hostis, -is, -ium, m.

enemy

civitas, -atis, f.

citizenry, state

voluptas, -atis, f.

pleasure

inquinatus, -a, -um

dirty, stained

CHAPTER 7 Syntax of the Adjective

103

labor, -oris, m.

labor, work

rapacitas, -atis, f.

rapacity

avarus, -a, -um

greedy

largitio, -onis, f.

extravagant expenditure, bribery

effusus, -a, -um

unrestrained

This page intentionally left blank.

CHAPTER 8

Syntax of the

Simple Sentence

A simple sentence is an independent clause; that is, unlike a subordinate clause, it can stand alone as a complete unit of meaning. This is what makes a sentence.

Most simple sentences have a subject and a verb:

Vir ambulat.

The man walks.

In Latin the subject may be implied in the verb by its ending: Ambula^{mus}.

We walk.

Sometimes the verb "to be" may be left out of a sentence: Ille vir sapiens.

That man is wise.

Because Latin is an inflected language, it does not rely upon word order to determine the grammatical meaning of its phrases and sentences. This does not mean that its word order is random.

Latin has a normal, neutral order that tends to place the subject of a sentence first and the verb last. Usually direct objects and adverbs gravitate toward the verb, with other information such as datives and prepositional phrases falling in the middle of the sentence.

Consider the following sequence:

De^{let}.

He destroys.

M^{ult}ite^{as} de^{let}.

The soldiers destroy.

M^{ult}ite^{as} urbem de^{le}bunt.

The soldiers will destroy the city.

M^{ult}ite^{as} gladi^o urbem de^{le}bant.

The soldiers were destroying the city

with swords.

M^{ult}ite^{as} cum naut^o gladi^o urbem

The soldiers with the sailors had

pro^{re}ge de^{le}verant.

destroyed the city with swords on behalf

of the king.

105

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

Remember that adjectives and genitives tend to follow the nouns they modify: *Mōlite reagnō audace gladiō magnō*

The bold soldiers of the kingdom

urbem miserrimam pro rege caeco

destroyed the most wretched city with

deleaverunt.

great swords on behalf of the blind

king.

Exercise

1. Translate the following.

1. *Nauta videt.*

2. *Nauta montem videbit.*

3. *Nauta oculō montem viderat.*

4. *Nauta bellum in montibus oculō viderat.*

5. *Multō cum lacrimō nauta miser bellum pessimum in montibus regnō*

videbat.

6. *Mōns videtur.*

7. *Mōns a nauta videtur.*

8. *Bellum a nauta in montibus visum est.*

Indicative Mood

The indicative is the mood of fact. It presents information simply as true. (Tenses of the indicative should be translated according to the paradigms given in Chapter 2.) Exercises

2. Translate the following sentences, paying particular attention to the tense of the verb.

1. Rex cōveās terret.

2. Rex cōveās terreābit.

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

107

3. Rex cōveās terruit.

4. Rex cōveās terruerit.

5. Rex cōveās terruerat.

6. Rex cōveās terreābat.

3. Translate the following.

1. Argumentōs ageamus, signōs luce omnō clarioꝛibus crōamina refelleamus; reas cum reā, causa cum causa, ratio cum ratioꝛne pugnaābit.

2. Horum duoꝛum crōaminum video auctoꝛem, video fontem, video certum noꝛmen et caput.

3. Veŕum haec genera virtuŕum noŕn soŕlum in moŕribus noŕtrŕs sed vix iam in librŕs reperiuntur. Chartae quoque quae illam pristinam seveŕitatem contineŕbant obŕoleŕunt.

Vocabulary

arguŕmentum, -ŕn, n.

argument

agoŕ, agere, eŕgŕ, aŕtus

act, proceed

signum, -ŕn, n.

sign, proof

lux, luŕcis, f.

light

claŕus, -a, -um

clear, bright

crŕmen, crŕminis, n.

criminal charge

reŕ reŕ, f.

(here) fact

causa, -ae, f.

case

108

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

refelloŕ, refellere

refute, disprove

ratio, -onis, f.

reasoning, reckoning

auctor, -oris, m.

source, creator

fontanus, -ntis, -ium, m.

fountain, source

caput, capitis, n.

head

verum

but

genus, generis, n.

type, kind

virtus, -utis, f.

excellence

mos, moris, -ium, m.

custom

vix (adv.)

scarcely

liber, librarius, m.

book

reperio, reperire

discover

charta, -ae, f.

page

quoque

even, also

pristinus, -a, -um

ancient, pristine

severitas, -tatis, f.

severity, seriousness

Vocabulary

terra, -ae, f.

earth, land

caelum, -ō, n.

heaven

spōritus, -u, m.

breath, air

pendeo, pendeare

hang

certus, -a, -um

certain

discretus, -a, -um

separate

spatium, -ō, n.

space, interval

septem

seven

stōdus, stōderis, n.

star

incessus, -u, m.

walking, movement

voco, vocare

call

erro, errare

wander (here errantia planets)

medius, -a, -um

in the middle, central

sol, solis, m.

sun

fertur

(here) moves

amplus, -a, -um

large

magnitudo, -inis, f.

size, magnitude

potestas, -tatis, f.

power

tempus, temporis, n.

time, season

rector, -oris, m.

helmsman, ruler

mundus, -us, m.

world

principalis, -e

original, principal

110

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

regimen, -inis, n.

rule

numen, -inis, n.

spirit

credo, credere

believe

deceit

it is doing (acc. and inf.)

opus, operis, n.

work

aestimo, aestimare

judge, reckon, estimate

lux, lucis, f.

light

ministroÅ, ministraÅre

serve, provide

auferoÅ

remove

tenebrae, -aÅrum, f. pl.

darkness, shadows

reliquus, -a, -um

remaining

occultoÅ, occultaÅre

hide, conceal

illustroÅ, illustraÅre

illuminate

vicis, vicis, f.

turning, succession

annus, -oÅ, m.

year

renascor, renascõÅ, renaÅtus sum

be reborn

temperoÅ, temperaÅre

restrain, regulate

tristitia, -ae, f.

gloom, sadness

discutioÅ, discutere

strike away, scatter

nuÅbila, -oÅrum, n. pl.

clouds

sereÅnoÅ, sereÅnaÅre

make calm, pacify

luÅmen, -inis, n.

light

faenero, faenera

lend

praeclarus, -a, -um

extremely bright

eximius, -a, -um

outstanding

intueor, intueor

look upon, watch

Imperative Mood

As stated earlier, the imperative is the mood for giving commands. It should be translated according to the paradigms given in Chapter 2.

tace

be silent (pl.)

ab

go away

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

111

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

For negative commands, Latin does not simply negate the imperative, but it uses a combination of *no* for the singular or *no* for the plural with the present infinitive.

No *ambula*!

Do not walk! (sing.)

No *loqu*!

Do not speak! (pl.)

No *vide*!

Do not be seen! (sing.)

Latin also expresses negative commands using either the present or perfect subjunctive with the negative *ne*:

Ne *ambule*!

Do not walk! (sing.)

Ne *ambula* *veris*

Do not walk! (sing.)

Ne intercedatis!

Do not kill! (pl.)

Ne interfeceritis

Do not kill! (pl.)

Exercises

5. Translate the following.

1. Nolote clamare!

2. Ne librum scribatur!

3. Ne folum pepuleris!

4. Nolote pellere!

5. Ne urbem deleveritis, o milite!

6. Nolote urbem delevere, o milite!

7. Urbem delevere, o milite!

8. Urbem delevere, o milite!

6. Translate the following.

1. Audete, audete, patres conscripti, et cognoscite res publicae vulnera.

2. Conservate igitur res publicae, iudices, comitem bonarum artium, bonarum partium, bonorum viro-

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

3. Ne me hodie, cum isto ut proavocavit respondero, oblatum esse putatis meo.

4. Quam ob rem discede atque nunc mihi timorem eripe: si est verus, ne opprimar, solum falsus, ut tandem aliquando timeare de sinam.

Vocabulary

patres conscripti

senators

cognosco, cognoscere

learn

vulnus, vulneris, n.

wound

conservo, conservare

save, preserve

igitur (adv.)

therefore

iudex, iudicis, m.

judge

civis, civis, -ium, m.

citizen

ars, artis, -ium, f.

skill, art

pars, partis, -ium, f.

part

hodie (adv.)

today

provoco, provocare

provoke

respondeo, respondere

respond

obliscor, obliscor, obliscus sum

forget

puto, putare

think

quam ob rem

for which reason

discedo, discedere

leave, depart

timor, -oris, m.

fear

eripio, eripere

tear away, remove

verus, -a, -um

true, real

opprimo, opprimere

oppress

sed

but if

falsus, -a, -um

false, unreal

tandem (adv.)

at least

aliquando

at some time, ever

timeo, timeare

fear

deasino, deasinere

cease (inf.)

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

113

Subjunctive Mood: Independent Uses

Chapter 2 stated that the subjunctive should not be translated in isolation, but that its translation often involved such English words as 'could,' 'would,' and 'might.'

The subjunctive mood does most of its work in subordinate clauses, usually governed by conjunctions or a grammatical context that determines its meaning.

(These will be treated in the next chapter.) However, the subjunctive can also be used as the main verb of an independent clause. Following are its main independent uses.

POTENTIAL

The subjunctive may express potentiality or possibility. The present tense is used for present potentiality, and the imperfect for past potentiality: *Mõlite urbem deleant.*

The soldiers could destroy the city.

Mõlite urbem deleant.

The soldiers could have destroyed the

city.

DELIBERATIVE

This form of the subjunctive is used, often in the first person, to ask questions not of fact but of deliberation:

Urbem deleaamus?

Should we destroy the city?

Quid1 urbem deleamus?

Why should we have destroyed the city?

Again the present subjunctive is used for deliberation in present time, and the imperfect subjunctive for past deliberation.

OPTATIVE

The optative subjunctive expresses a wish. Often the word *utinam*, 'if only,'

accompanies this usage.²

The present subjunctive expresses a wish in the present time: *Utinam mōliteās urbem deāleant!*

If only the soldiers would destroy the city!

The imperfect subjunctive also expresses a wish in the present time, but one that cannot come true:

Utinam mōliteās urbem deāleārent!

If only the soldiers were destroying the city! (We know that they are not.)

1 *Quid* here is an adverbial accusative, a common usage best translated as "why?"

2 Less often, *ut* may be used.

114

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a wish in the past that could not have come true:

Utinam mōliteās urbem deāleāvissent!

If only the soldiers had destroyed the city! (We know that they did not.)

To negate an optative subjunctive, Latin uses *neā* rather than *noā*: *Utinam neā canant!*

If only they were not singing!

HORTATORY OR JUSSIVE

The subjunctive can be used to express commands, mostly in the first and third persons.³ (For second-person commands, usually the imperative is used.) Generally the present subjunctive is used:

Urbem deāleaāmus!

Let us destroy the city!

Mōliteās urbem deāleant!

Let the soldiers destroy the city!

To negate these, Latin uses *neā*.

Neā loquaātur!

Let him not speak.

Exercises

7. Translate the following. Then identify the italicized usages.

1. *Utinam nautae nostrō vōācissent!*

2. Ut nautae vincant!

3. Nautae vincant.

4. Ad mare ambulem?

5. Ad mare ambulaŕeŕmus?

3 Customarily the ŕrst-person usage is called hortatory and the third-person jussive.

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

115

6. Ad mare ambuleŕmus!

7. Utinam ad mare ambulaŕuisseŕmus!

8. Mŕŕliteŕs ad mare noŕn ambulaŕrent?

8. Translate the following.

1. Ad decus et ad lōbertatem natō sumus: aut haec teneamus aut cum dōgnitate moriamur.

2. Quis enim nō timeat omnia providentem et cogitantem et animadvertentem et omnia ad se pertine re putantem curiosum et ple num negotiō deum?

3. O stultitiam! Stultitiamne dōcam an impudentiam singulam?

4. Deatur aliqd ludus aetō sit adulescentia lōberior; nō omnia volupta-

tibus denegentur; nō semper superet vera illa et de recta ratio; vincat aliquando cupiditas voluptasque ratio nem.

5. Utinam tam facile vera invenire possim quam falsa convincere!

6. Utinam cum Caesar societas aut numquam coisisset aut numquam diremisset!

116

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

7. Quid enim me interponerem audaciae tuae?

Vocabulary

decus, decoris, n.

honor

libertas, -tatis, f.

freedom

aut. . .aut

either. . .or

nascor, nascor, natus sum

be born

dignitas, -tatis, f.

dignity, prestige

enim

for indeed

provideo, provide

foresee, provide

coagito, cogitare

think, ponder

animadverto, animadvertere

notice

pertineo, pertinere

extend to, relate to

puto, putare

think

curiosus, -a, -um

careful, attentive

plenus, -a, -um

full

negotium, -i, n.

business, concern

stultitia, -ae, f.

stupidity

impudentia, -ae, f.

shamelessness

singularis, -e

singular, remarkable

ludus, -i, m.

sport, gaming

aetas, -atis, f.

age, time of life

adulescentia, -ae, f.

youth

liber, libera, liberum

free

voluptas, -atis, f.

pleasure

denego, denegare

deny, refuse

superare, superare

overcome

verus, -a, -um

true, real

deŕectus, -a, -um

upright, straight

ratioŕ, -oŕnis, f.

reason, reckoning

vincoŕ, vincere

conquer

aliquandoŕ (adv.)

sometimes

cupiditaŕs, -taŕtis, f.

desire

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

117

falsus, -a, -um

false

convincoŕ, convincere

defeat, refute

societaŕs, -taŕtis, f.

alliance

numquam (adv.)

never

coeoŕ, coŕŕe

enter

dirimoŕ, dirimere, direŕmŕ, diremptus

rip apart, destroy

interpoŕno, interponere

place as an obstacle, interpose

Participles

Participles are defined as verbal adjectives. That is, they combine features of adjectives and verbs.

As adjectives, they modify nouns and must agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. They may also be used as substantives.

poetaŕs

the singing poet

urbs capta

the captured city

captus

the captured man

As verbs they show tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive).

They may also govern direct objects and take many constructions of finite verbs.

Poeta lunam videns canit.

The poet seeing the moon sings.

Here lunam is the direct object of the participle videns, which itself modifies the subject poeta.

Often, as in the above example, the participle separates itself from the noun it modifies in order to enclose anything it governs (in this case, the direct object lunam).

Miles urbem a rege captam delectatur.

The soldier about to destroy the city

clamat.

captured by the king shouts.

Note how a rege is enclosed by urbem captam, which is itself enclosed by miles delectatur.

Because participles do so much work in Latin, it is often useful to translate them more fully as relative clauses in English:

The soldier who is about to destroy the city which was captured by the king is shouting.

It is important to realize, however, that the tense of a participle is not an independent time value as it is for forms of the indicative, but is only relative to the tense of the main verb in its clause.

The time value of a present participle is simultaneous with that of the main verb:

Poeta canens lunam videt.

The poet who is singing sees the moon.

118

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

The present participle canens tells us that the poet is singing at the same time as he sees the moon.

Poeta canens lunam videbat.

The poet who was singing saw the

moon.

Now the time value of the present participle must be simultaneous with that of the main verb, which is in the past,

videbat, and so it is translated 'who was singing.'

The time value of the perfect participle is prior to that of the main verb: *Miles urbem a rege captam destruxit.*

The soldier destroys the city which was captured by the king.

The perfect participle *captam* tells us that the capture took place prior to the action of the main verb *destruxit*.

If the main verb is itself in the past tense, the perfect participle will express a time prior to that time:

Miles urbem a rege captam destruxit.

The soldier destroyed the city which had been conquered by the king.

If the main verb is in the future, the perfect participle will again express a time prior to that:

Miles urbem a rege captam destruet.

The soldier will destroy the city which has been captured by the king.

The time value of the future active participle is subsequent to that of the main verb:

Miles urbem destruetus clamabit.

The soldier who is going to destroy the city is shouting.

The destruction denoted by *destruetus* will take place after the present time signified by *clamabit*.

Miles urbem destruetus clamavit.

The soldier who was about to destroy the city shouted.

Exercise

9. Translate the following.

1. *poeta canebat*

2. *libertas destruita*

3. *libertas aversitia destruita*

4. *libertas aversitia molitum destruita*

5. poeĀta claĀmaĀtuĀrus

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

119

6. poeĀta in monte claĀmaĀtuĀrus

7. poeĀta in monte deĀ lōĀbertaĀte claĀmaĀtuĀrus

8. poeĀta in monte deĀ lōĀbertaĀte avaĀritiaĀ mōĀlitum deĀleĀtaĀ claĀmaĀtuĀrus.

9. PoeĀta in monte deĀ lōĀbertaĀte avaĀritiaĀ mōĀlitum deĀleĀtaĀ claĀmatuĀrus moritur.

10. PoeĀta in monte deĀ lōĀbertaĀte avaĀritiaĀ mōĀlitum deĀleĀtaĀ claĀmatuĀrus mortuus est.

11. Puer ad mare ambulaĀns servoĀs captoĀs timet.

12. Puer ad mare ambulaĀns servoĀs aĀ nautōĀs captoĀs timeĀbat.

13. Puer ad mare ambulaĀns servoĀs animaĀlia interĀcienteĀs videt.

14. Puer ad mare ambulaĀns animaĀlia a servōĀs interfecta vōĀdit.

Relative Clauses

Relative clauses, like participle phrases, are both adjectival and govern grammatical constructions themselves. They are adjectival in that they modify an antecedent to which they are attached by a relative pronoun. The relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number. It takes its case from the grammatical function it fulfills within its own clause.

ReĀx quem poeĀta timet pecuĀniam amat. The king whom the poet fears loves money.

Most often a relative clause begins with a relative pronoun and ends with a verb: quem poeĀta timet

The relative pronoun quem is masculine accusative singular. Its antecedent reĀx is masculine nominative singular. The pronoun quem is masculine and singular to 120

CHAPTER 8 Syntax of the Simple Sentence

agree with reĀx, and accusative because it is the direct object of the verb timet within its own clause.

ReĀx cui gladium dedistō aĀ poeĀtaĀ

The king to whom you gave a sword is

timeĀtur.

feared by the poet.

In agreement with its antecedent reĀx, cui is masculine singular. It is dative because it is the indirect object of its own clause.

If it can be easily understood in context, the antecedent of a relative pronoun may be left out:

QuōĀ pecuĀniam amant sunt miserōĀ.

Those who love money are wretched.

The antecedent of quōĀ is understood to be the subject of the main verb sunt.

Exercise

10. Translate the following. Explain the case of the relative pronoun.

1. ReĀgōĀna quam reĀx timet aĀ poeĀtaĀ amaĀtur.

2. ReĀx a quoĀ reĀgōĀna timeĀtur poeĀtam oĀdit.

3. ReĀx quem reĀgōĀna oĀdit animaĀlia magnoĀrum cornuum timet.

4. Anima Alia quae ad urbem ducta erant a rege quod poetas occidit multum timebantur.

5. Anima Alia quibus cornua magna erant a militibus regis interfecta sunt.

6. Corpora animalium quorum cornua vendita erant in ignem pernebantur.

CHAPTER 9

Syntax of the

Complex Sentence

A complex sentence is one that contains one or more subordinate clauses that are said to depend on the main or independent clause. This means that they cannot stand alone as sentences, but must exist in conjunction with an independent clause.

When he got home, he destroyed the television.

Because he destroyed the television, his sister was angry.

“When he got home” and “because he destroyed the television” are subordinate clauses. They cannot stand alone as sentences. A subordinate clause gives more information about the main clause by relating it to other circumstances.

We say that words such as “when” and “because” are subordinating conjunctions. They serve to introduce subordinate clauses and usually tell you what clauses mean.

“When” introduces a temporal clause. “When he got home” is a temporal clause. It situates the action of the main clause in time, telling us when he destroyed the television.

“Because” introduces a causal clause. “Because he destroyed the television” is a causal clause, telling us why his sister was angry.

Latin has many different kinds of subordinate clauses. They are categorized according to the different kinds of information they offer about the main clause.

Although there are many such categories, it may be convenient to simply think of their differences as differences in the vocabulary of subordinating conjunctions.

Some subordinating conjunctions take the indicative, and some take the subjunctive. Some can take either, with differences in meaning. Those that take the indicative will take whatever tense their sense requires. Those that take the subjunctive, however, are bound by two important grammatical considerations, 121

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

122

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

known as sequence of tenses and relative time. These will apply to almost all uses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses:

Sequence of Tenses

Subordinate uses of the subjunctive follow the 'sequence of tenses.' This means that the tense of the subjunctive used in a subordinate clause will depend on the tense of the verb in the main clause.

There are four tenses of the subjunctive:

Present

Imperfect

Perfect

Pluperfect

If the main verb refers to the present or future, the subjunctive in a subordinate clause that follows it must be either present or perfect. This is said to be in primary sequence. If the main verb refers to the past, the subjunctive in a subordinate clause that follows it must be either imperfect or pluperfect. This is said to be in secondary sequence.¹

In each sequence, then, there are two possible tenses of the subjunctive that may be used. The difference between the two in each case will be one of relative time.

RELATIVE TIME

The concept of relative time first appeared in the discussion of participles (p. 117).

There it was said that the tense of the participle is not an objective time value, but one that can be understood only in relation to the time of the main verb. The same is true of subjunctives in subordinate clauses.

In primary sequence, the present subjunctive expresses a time simultaneous with (or sometimes subsequent to) that of the main verb: Scio quid facias.

I know what you are doing.

The present subjunctive tells us that whatever you are doing is happening at the same time as my knowing.

The perfect subjunctive expresses a time prior to that of the main verb: Scio quid feceris.

I know what you did.

The perfect subjunctive tells us that what you did happened before the time of my knowing, as if to say 'I now know what you did then.'

1 The perfect indicative is unusual in that it has potentially two different time values, one past ("did") and one present ("have done"). Because this is so, it may lead to primary or secondary sequence in a given context.

However, this should be something to consider at more advanced stages of study.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

123

In secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive expresses a time simultaneous with (sometimes subsequent to) that of the main verb: *Sciebam quid facere*.

I knew what you were doing.

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a time prior to that of the main verb: *Sciebam quid fecisse*.

I knew what you had done.

As stated above, though there are many different categories of subordinate clauses, for the most part it is possible to handle them correctly by knowing what their subordinating conjunctions mean and remembering the rules of sequence for uses of the subjunctive.

Temporal Clauses

Temporal clauses situate the action of the main clause in time by relating it to something else. There are many different subordinating conjunctions that introduce them.

Some temporal conjunctions take the indicative:

postquam

after

cum

when

ut

when

ubi

when

Cum mōlite urbem vōceArunt,

When the soldiers conquered the town,

servō fuAgeArunt.

the slaves ed.

Some can take the indicative or subjunctive:

antequam

before

priusquam

before

dum

until

donec

until

quoad

until

They take the indicative to represent facts:

Poetae fuerunt antequam milites

The poets were before the soldiers

urbem cepērunt.

captured the city.

The Latin tells us that the capture of the city actually took place.

Milites pugnant donec poetae

The soldiers fought until the poets were.

fuerunt.

124

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

These conjunctions take the subjunctive to represent something foreseen or anticipated:

Poetae fuerunt antequam milites

The poets were before the soldiers could

urbem caperent.

capture the city.

The Latin tells us that the capture of the city is something anticipated by the poets. It does not tell us whether or not it actually took place.

The imperfect subjunctive is used here because the main verb fuerunt refers to the past, creating secondary sequence. In primary sequence, the present subjunctive would be used:

Poetae fugient antequam milites

The poets will flee before the soldiers

urbem capiant.

can capture the city.

Causal Clauses

A causal clause gives the cause for the main clause.

Some conjunctions take the indicative:

quando

because

quoniam

because

Quoniam mōlites urbem cepērunt,

Because the soldiers captured the city,

poetae fuērunt.

the poets ēd.

Some take the subjunctive:

cum

because

Cum mōlites urbem cepissent,

Because the soldiers had captured the

poetae fuērunt.

city, the poets ēd.

The pluperfect subjunctive cepissent is used in secondary sequence and shows time prior to the main verb.

The imperfect subjunctive would show time simultaneous: Cum mōlites urbem caperent,

Because the soldiers were capturing the

poetae fuērunt.

city, the poets ēd.

In primary sequence the present subjunctive shows time simultaneous: Cum mōlites urbem capiant,

Because the soldiers are capturing the

poetae fugiunt.

city, the poets are eeing.

The perfect subjunctive shows time prior:

Cum mōlites urbem ceperint,

Because the soldiers have captured the

city, the poets are seeing.

city, the poets are seeing.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

125

Some conjunctions can take the indicative or the subjunctive: quod

because

quia

because

They take the indicative to assert a cause as fact.

Quod mōdō urbem cepērunt,

Because the soldiers (actually) captured

the city, the poets saw.

the city, the poets saw.

They take the subjunctive to express a cause given by someone other than the writer of the sentence:

The poets saw (supposedly) because the

soldiers had captured the city.

soldiers had captured the city.

urbem cepissent.

Concessive Clauses

Concessive clauses begin with the word 'although.' They concede that, although something is true, the main clause remains unaffected and is still true. Often the main clause will contain the word tamen, 'nevertheless.'

Some conjunctions take the indicative:

etsi

although

quamquam

although

Some take the subjunctive:

cum

although

quomodo

although

Cum mōlite urbem cepissent,

Although the soldiers had captured the

city, the poets nevertheless did not

flee.

ee.

The pluperfect subjunctive is used in secondary sequence, showing time prior to that of the main verb fuerunt.

Exercises

1. Translate the following. Pay close attention to the mood of the verb in the subordinate clauses.

1. Quia servō miserrimō erant, rex populo aurum dabat.

2. Rex populo aurum dabat quod servō miserrimō essent.

126

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

3. Etsō servō miserrimō sunt, aurum populo rex non dōbit.

4. Cum rex populo aurum dedisset, servō non clamabant.

5. Cum rex populo aurum dedit, clamaverunt.

6. Quoniam agōna capta erat, rex bellum parabat.

7. Rex bellum parabat priusquam agōna interceretur.

8. Bellum gerebant donec rex interfectus est.

9. Bellum gerebant dum rex rediret.

10. Cum rex interfectus esset, regina clamabat.

11. Cum rex interfectus esset, regina tamen felix erat.

12. Ut luna discessit, luna die decessit.

2. Translate the following sentences.

1. Tum denique inter eos, cum iam nemo tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tuus similis inveniri poterit.

2. Neque ideo minus efficaces sunt orationes nostrae quia ad aures iudicantium cum voluptate perveniunt.

3. Nam interitus quidem tuus quis bonus non esset auctor, cum in eius salute et vota optimae cuiusque, laeta populi Romana dignitasque consisteret?

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

4. Sed antequam aggrediar ad ea quae a te disputata sunt, de te ipso dōcam quid sentiam.

5. Cum de antōquōs loquāris, uātere antōqua lōbertate, a qua vel magis degenerāvimus quam ab eloquentia.

6. Ipse Pompeius, ab inimōcōs Caesaris incitatus et quod neāminem dōgnitate secum exaequārō volebat, totum se ab eius amōcitia averterat.

7. Verum tamen homines, quamvōs in turbidōs rebus sint, sō modo homines sunt, interdum animōs relaxantur.

Vocabulary

tum (adv.)

then

denique (adv.)

enally, at last

intercior, intercere

kill

neamo, neaminis

nobody

improbis, -a, -um

base, depraved

perditis, -a, -um

ruined, desperate

similis, -e

similar (gen.)

ideo

for this reason

efacax, -a

effective

oratio, -o

speech

auris, auris, -ium, f.

ear

iudico, iudicare

to judge

voluptas, -ta

pleasure

128

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

pervenio, pervenire

arrive, come to

interitus, -u

death, destruction

auctor, -or

creator, producer

quidem

indeed

saluŃs, -uŃtis, f.

health, safety

lŃbertaŃs, -taŃtis, f.

freedom

dŃagnitaŃs, -taŃtis, f.

dignity, prestige

consistoŃ, consistere

rest upon

aggredior, aggredŃŃ, aggressus sum

approach

disputoŃ, disputaŃre

argue, dispute

antiquus, -a, -um

ancient, old

loquor, loquŃŃ, locuŃtus sum

speak

uŃtor, uŃtŃŃ, uŃsus sum (abl.)

make use of

deŃgeneroŃ, deŃgeneraŃre

degenerate

eŃloquentia, -ae, f.

eloquence

Pompeius, -ŃŃ, m.

Pompeius

incitaŃtus, -a, -um

roused, incited

inimŃŃcus, -a, -um

enemy

Caesar, -aris, m.

Caesar

exaequo, exaequa

make level or equal

amicitia, -ae, f.

friendship

averto, avertere

turn away

verum

but

turbidus, -a, -um

violently disturbed

modo (adv.)

at least, only

interdum (adv.)

sometimes

animus, -i, m.

mind, spirit

relaxo, relaxa

relax

Purpose Clauses

Purpose clauses express the purpose or reason for an action. Like causal clauses, they answer the question "why?"

They are introduced by the conjunction *ut* or, if negated, by the conjunction *ne*, and they take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

Miles urbem vincent ut rex caperetur. The soldiers will conquer the city in order that the king may be captured.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

129

Miles urbe vicerunt ne rex fugeret.

The soldiers conquered the city in order

that the king might not see.

Indirect Commands

Indirect commands follow verbs of commanding, requesting, begging, etc. They express the content of the command or request and answer the question 'what,' i.e.,

'what did he command?'

They are introduced by the conjunction *ut* and negated with *ne*, and take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

ReX imperat ut milites urbem vincant. The king orders that the soldiers conquer the city.

ReX optabat ne milites urbem vincerent. The king was begging that the soldiers not conquer the city.

Result Clauses

Result clauses express the result of an action or state. They are introduced by *ut* and take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence: *Tam miser est ut clamet.*

He is so wretched that he shouts.

Ita clamavit ut pueri timerent.

He shouted in such a way that the

children were afraid.

Usually the main clause before a result clause contains an intensifying word such as *ita* or *tam* that triggers the result.

Unlike purpose clauses and indirect commands, which also use the conjunction *ut*, result clauses do not use *ne* but are negated using *non* inside the clause: *Tam dulciter poeta canebat ut*

The poet sang so sweetly that we were

loqui non possumus.

not able to speak.

A result clause may also be the subject or object of certain verbs: *ReX effecit ut libertas destrueretur.*

The king brought it about that liberty

was destroyed.

In this sentence the clause *ut libertas destrueretur* is actually the direct object of the verb *effecit*.

Accidit ut rex deamentissimus sit.

It happens that the king is extremely

insane.

In this sentence the clause *ut rex deamentissimus sit* is the subject of the verb *accidit*. In such cases the clause is called a substantive result clause, because the clause acts as a noun within its sentence.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Fear Clauses

Fear clauses express fears. They use the conjunctions *ut* and *ne* but with reverse meanings from the clauses above. *Ut* expresses negative fears, and *ne* expresses positive fears.

Timebamus ne rex liberaretur. We were afraid that the king would destroy liberty.

Timeamus ut milites veniant.

We are afraid that the soldiers are not coming.

Sometimes a fear clause may begin with *ne* and then be negated with *non*: *Timeamus ne milites non veniant.*

We are afraid that the soldiers are not coming.

Clauses of Prevention

Certain verbs with meanings of prevention or hindrance take clauses of prevention.

They are introduced by the conjunction *ne* or *quominus* and take the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence:

Rex milites impedivit quominus

The king prevented the soldiers from capturing the city.

If the main clause is negated, the prevention clause may be introduced by *quominus*: *Rex non impediet quominus milites*

The king will not prevent the soldiers from capturing the city.

Clauses of Doubting

Doubt is expressed in two ways in Latin. If the expression of doubt is not negated, it will take the form of an indirect question (see p. 153). If the expression of doubt is negated, it takes a clause of doubting introduced by the conjunction *quominus*: *Non dubito quominus milites urbem*

I do not doubt that the soldiers captured the city.

In this example the perfect subjunctive expresses time prior to that of the main verb in primary sequence.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

131

Clauses of Proviso

Clauses of proviso give a condition for the main clause. They take the subjunctive and are introduced by the following conjunctions:

dum

provided that

modo

provided that

dummodo

provided that

Re^o x populo^o aurum do^o ana^o bit dummodo^o The king will give money to the people m^o lite^o s urbem capiant.

provided that the soldiers capture the

city.

Exercises

3. Translate the following. Then identify the type of subordinate clause in each sentence.

1. Populus timet ne^o ava^o ritia re^o gis regnum de^o leat.

2. Poe^o ta time^o bat ne^o ava^o ritia regnum de^o le^o visset.

3. Re^o x poe^o ta^o s de^o terret quo^o aminus libro^o s scr^o o^o bant.

4. Re^o x m^o lite^o s no^o n de^o terre^o bit qu^o o^o n poe^o ta^o s inter^o ciant.

5. Ro^o ma^o n^o o^o no^o n dubita^o bant qu^o o^o n imperium esset maximum bono^o rum.

6. PoeĀta reĀgeĀm oĀraĀbant neĀ librĀ deĀleĀrentur.

7. ReĀx libroĀs noĀn deĀleĀbit modo mĀliteĀs poeĀtaĀs interĀciant.

8. ReĀx poeĀtaĀs interĀcere vult ut populus esset librĀs lĀber.

9. PoĀetae a reĀge sĀc interĀcieĀbantur ut populus multum timeĀret.

132

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

10. Tam magna erat avaĀritia reĀgis ut populus nunc sit populus servoĀrum.

4. Translate the following sentences.

1. Erat tam deĀmeĀns is ut omnĀs suaĀs fortuĀnaĀs alieĀnĀs servĀs commit-teret?

2. Vincat aliquandoĀ cupiditaĀs voluptaĀsque ratioĀnem, dum modo illa praescriptioĀ moderatioĀque teneaĀtur.

3. Sed iam, ut omnĀ meĀ invidiaĀ lĀberem, poĀnam in medioĀ sententiaĀs philosophoĀrum deĀ natuĀraĀ deoĀrum.

4. Sed cum mihi, patreŕs conŕiptŕ, et proŕ meŕ aliquid et in Antoŕnium multa dŕcenda sint, alterum petoŕ a voŕbŕs, ut meŕ proŕ meŕ dŕcentem benigneŕ, alterum ipse efŕciam, ut contraŕ illum cum dŕcam attenteŕ audiaŕtis.

5. Tu iŕtŕs faucibus, iŕtŕs lateribus, ista gladiaŕtoŕriaŕ toŕtŕus corporis

ŕrmitate tantum vŕnŕ in Hippiae nuptiŕs exhauseraŕs ut tibi necesse esset in populŕ Roŕmaŕnŕ conspectuŕ vomere poŕtrŕdieŕ.

6. Cuŕr aut tam familiaŕis fuistŕ ut aurum commodaŕreŕs aut tam inimŕca ut veneŕnum timeŕreŕs?

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

133

7. An timeŕbant neŕ tot uŕnum, valenteŕs imbecillum, alaŕcreŕs perterritum superaŕre noŕn possent?

8. Nec dubitaŕrŕ deŕbet quŕn fuerint ante Homeŕrum poeŕtae.

9. Quam ob rem disce de atque hunc mihi timorem eripe; si est verus, ne opprimar, sed falsus, ut tandem aliquando timeam de sinam.

Vocabulary

deumans, -ntis

insane

fortuna, -ae, f.

fortune, wealth

alienus, -a, -um

belonging to another person

committo, committere

entrust

vinco, vincere

conquer

aliquando

sometimes

cupiditas, -tatis, f.

desire

voluptas, -tatis, f.

pleasure

ratio, -onis, f.

reasoning, rational thought

ille, illa, illud

(here) the following

praescriptio, -onis, f.

precept, rule

moderatio, -onis, f.

moderation, control

invidia, -ae, f.

ill will

liberatio, -onis, f.

free

sententia, -ae, f.

thought, opinion

philosophus, -i, m.

philosopher

patres conscripti

senators

Antonius, -i, m.

Antonius

alter, -tra, -trum

one (of two)

benigne (adv.)

benevolently, in a friendly manner

efficio, effectus

bring about, effect

attente (adv.)

attentively

fauces, -ium, f. pl.

throat

134

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

latus, lateris, n.

side, -ank

gladius, -ii, m.

of a gladiator

©rmitaÅs, -taÅtis, f.

strength

võÅnum, -õÅ, n.

wine

Hippia, -ae, f.

Hippia (a woman's name)

nuptiae, -aÅrum, f. pl.

wedding

exhaurioÅ, exhaurõÅre

drain, drink up

conspectus, -uÅs, m.

sight, view

vomoÅ, vomere

vomit

postrõÅdieÅ (adv.)

on the following day

cuÅr

why

aut . . . aut

either . . . or

familiaÅris, -e

friendly, intimate

commodoÅ, commodaÅre

lend

inimõÅcus, -a, -um

enemy, hostile

veneÅnum, -õÅ, n.

poison

tot (indeclinable)

so many (here, so many men)

valeōns, -ntis

strong, powerful

imbecillus, -a, -um

weak

alacer, -cris, -cre

swift

perterritus, -a, -um

thoroughly terrified

supero, supera

overcome

debeo, debe

owe, ought (inf.)

quam ob rem

for which reason

discedo, discedere

leave, depart

timor, -oris, m.

fear

verus, -a, -um

true, real

opprimo, opprimere

oppress

sed

but if

falsus, -a, -um

false, unreal

eripio, eripere

tear away, remove

tandem (adv.)

finally, at last

aliquando

at some time, ever

timeo, timeo

fear

desino, desinere

cease (inf.)

2 Referring to something mentioned earlier.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

135

Conditional Sentences

Conditional sentences are composed of two clauses:

If he works, he is happy

'If he works,' the subordinate clause, gives the condition for which the main clause will be true.

Latin grammars traditionally refer to the 'if' clause of a conditional sentence as the protasis and the main clause as the apodosis.

There are generally three kinds of conditional sentence: Simple conditions

Future conditions

Contrary-to-fact conditions

These categories differ according to the tense and mood of the verb they employ in the protasis and the apodosis.

The subordinating conjunction 'if' in Latin is *si*. Its negative is *non*. The main clause is negated normally, with *non*.

SIMPLE CONDITIONS

Simple conditions take a present or past tense of the indicative in both the protasis and apodosis. They should be translated accordingly.

Si laborat, miser est.

If he works, he is wretched.

Non laborabat, felix erat.

If he was not working, he was happy.

FUTURE CONDITIONS

There are three kinds of future conditions. Future-more-vivid conditions take the future indicative in both the protasis and the apodosis.

Sōmōlites urbem capient, poetae canent.

For convenience in English, the future indicative in the 'if' clause "if the soldiers will capture" is usually translated as a present:

If the soldiers capture the city, the poets will sing.

Sometimes in this type of condition the future perfect is used instead of the ordinary future indicative:

Sōmōlites urbem ceperint, poetae canent.

136

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Although in Latin this is felt to be more emphatic,³ the English translation remains the same:

If the soldiers capture the city, the poets will sing.

Future-less-vivid conditions take the present subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis. In Latin these sentences are felt to imagine the situation less definitely or "vividly" than the "more vivid" examples.

Sōmōlites urbem capiant, poetae canant.

Often these sentences are translated using "should" for the 'if' clause and

"would" for the main clause:

If the soldiers should capture the city, the poets would sing.

Regina miser sit nisi poeta canat.

The queen would be miserable if the

poet should not sing.

Occasionally a sentence will take the future indicative in one clause and the present subjunctive in the other. Such sentences are known as mixed future conditions.

CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS

Contrary-to-fact conditions refer to something unreal. (They are sometimes known as unreal conditions.) There are three kinds.

Present contrary-to-fact conditions refer to what is unreal in present time. They take the imperfect subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis: Sōmōlites urbem caperent,

If the soldiers were capturing the city,

poetae canerent.

the poets would be singing.

We know from both the Latin and the English translation that these things are not happening now.

If the protasis is negated, it is happening:

Nisō ad mare ambularem, laborarem.

If I were not walking to the sea, I would
be working.

From this it is clear that I am walking to the sea and therefore that I am not working.

Past contrary-to-fact conditions refer to what is unreal in past time. They take the pluperfect subjunctive in both the protasis and the apodosis: *Sōmōliteās urbem ceāpissent,*

If the soldiers had captured the city, the
poets would have sung.

poets would have sung.

3 Some grammars refer to this type as future most vivid or future more vivid with emphatic protasis.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

137

We know from both the Latin and the English translation that these things did not happen then in the past.

Labōāraāvisseāmus nisōā ad mare

We would have worked if we had not

ambulaāvisseāmus.

walked to the sea.

Mixed contrary-to-fact conditions refer to something that is unreal in the present because of something unreal in the past. They take the pluperfect subjunctive in the 'if' clause and the imperfect subjunctive in the main clause: *Sōmōliteās urbem ceāpissent, poeāta*

If the soldiers had captured the city, the

canerent.

poets would be singing.

We know from both the Latin and the English translation that the soldiers did not capture the city in the past and that therefore the poets are not singing now.

Exercises

5. Translate the following conditional sentences. Then identify what type they are.

1. *Sōā reāx deāmeāns regnum deāleābit, poeātae Roāmam fugient.*

2. *Nisōā reāx deāmeāns regnum deāleāvisset, poeātae Roāmam noān fuāgissent.*

3. NisõÅ fõÅlius ®dem servet, pater sit miserrimus.

4. NisõÅ fõÅlius ®dem servaÅret, pater esset miserrimus.

5. Nisi illoÅ tempore fõÅlius ®dem servaÅvisset, pater nunc esset miserrimus.

6. SõÅ in urbe multõÅ poeÅta ambulant, et reÅgõÅnae et populoÅ paÅcem doÅnant.

7. SõÅ reÅx poeÅtaÅs inter®ciat, populus timeat.

138

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

8. SõÅ reÅx deÅmeÅns poeÅtaÅs interfeÅcerit, populus multum timeÅbit.

9. SõÅ aÅ reÅge deÅmentõÅ poeÅta magnus interfectus esset, paÅcem reÅgõÅna deÅleÅvisset.

10. Sō poeāta magnus a reāge intercieātur, reāgōāna paācem deāleābit.

6. Translate the following sentences.

1. Memoriam quoque ipsam cum voce perdidisseāmus sō tam in nostra potestate esset oblōvōāscōā quan taceāre.

2. Multa ioca solent esse in epistulōās quae, prolata sō sint, inepta videantur.

3. Sō teā parenteās timeārent neque eoās ulla ratioāne plaācaāre posseās, ab eoārum oculōās aliquoā conceādereās.

4. Quod sō invenōāreātur aliqua cōāvitaās in quaā neāmoā peccaāret, supervacuum esset inter innocenteās oāraātor sōācut inter saānoās medicus.

5. Sed quid oppoānaās tandem sō negem meā umquam ad teā istaās litteraās mōāsisse?

6. DieŒs iam meŒ deŒciat sŒ quae dŒcŒ in eam sententiam possunt coŒner expoŒmere.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

139

Vocabulary

memoria, -ae, f.

memory

quoque

also, in the same way

vox, voŒis, f.

voice

perdoŒ, perdere, perdidŒ, perditus

lose, destroy

oblŒvŒscor, oblŒvŒscŒ, oblŒtus sum

forget

taceoŒ, taceŒre

be silent

iocum, ŒŒ, n.

joke

epistula, -ae, f.

letter

proŒferoŒ

bring forward, expose

video

(in passive) seem

ineptus, -a, -um

foolish

pareŒns, parentis, m.=f.

parent

ratio, -onis, f.

reasoning, way

placō, placāre

please

oculus, -ūs, m.

eye

aliquo (adv.)

to some other place

concedo, concedere

withdraw

quod sō

but if

invenio, invenire

to find

cōvita, -tatis, f.

citizenry, state

neamo, neaminis

nobody

pecco, peccare

commit an offense, sin

supervacuum, -a, -um

completely unnecessary

innocens, -ntis

innocent

orator, -oris, m.

orator, lawyer

sōcut

just as

sanus, -a, -um

healthy, well

medicus, -ō, m.

doctor

oppo, oppo, oppo

oppose, say in opposition

tandem (adv.)

really, after all

nego, nega

deny

umquam (adv.)

ever

litterae, -arum, f. pl.

letter

mitto, mittere, missus

send

de, de, de

be lacking, run out

sententia, -ae, f.

thought, opinion

140

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

co, co, co

try, attempt (inf.)

expro, expro

bring out, reveal, express

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive

Ordinary relative clauses that take the indicative provide factual information about their antecedent. There are, however, a variety of relative clauses that take the subjunctive to express more complex meanings.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC

A relative clause of characteristic gives generalizing or defining information about its antecedent.

Is est quod mortem timeat.

He is (the sort of person) who fears death.

This does not mean merely that he fears death, but that his fear of death is a natural part or result of his character.

Amo nihil quod pueri nocent.

I love nothing (of the sort) which harms children.

Relative clauses of characteristic are often found with such general expressions as Is est quod

He is (the sort) who

Sunt quod

There are those (of the sort) who

Nemo est quod

There is no one (of the sort) who

Nihil est quod

There is nothing (of the sort) which

However, they may just as often have specific antecedents: Cicero erat quod litteras amaret.

Cicero was (the sort of person) who

loved letters.

Other relative clauses that take the subjunctive correspond more closely to some of the subordinate clauses described above.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

A relative clause with the subjunctive, often after a verb of motion or action, can express purpose:

Rex ad urbem milites mittet quod

The king will send soldiers to the city in

order that they may kill the poets.

order that they may kill the poets.

It is easier to translate these simply as purpose clauses.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

141

Sometimes, if a place is indicated, the adverb ubi may be used as the relative: Rex ad urbem milites mittet ubi

The king will send soldiers to the city in

order that they may kill the poets.

order that there they may kill the
poets.

Ubi is a relative adverb.

Sometimes a relative clause of purpose will be introduced by *quo* and contain a comparative adverb:

Re urbem capiet *quo* facilius *poe*

The king will capture the city in order

inter

that by this he may kill the poets

more easily.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT

A relative clause with the subjunctive, often with an intensifier, can express result: *Re* erat tam *de* *quo* urbem

The king was so insane that he destroyed

the city.

the city.

It is easier to translate these simply as result clauses.

RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CAUSE

A relative clause with the subjunctive can express cause. Sometimes (but not always) the relative pronoun will be preceded by *ut*, *utpote*, or *quippe*.

Re *quippe* *quod* *de* *esset* urbem

The king, because he was insane,

destroyed the city.

destroyed the city.

Cicero *ut* *quod* *litteras* *amaret*

Cicero, in as much as he loved letters,

defended the liberty of the people.

defended the liberty of the people.

Exercises

7. Translate the following sentences.

1. *Ad* urbem *ve* *Arunt* *poe* *quod* *libros* *scr*

2. Tam caecō erant poeātae quō perōaculum noān videārent.

3. Sunt quōā pecuāniam pluās quam libertaātem ament.

4 The antecedent of quōā here is the whole action of the main clause, i.e., the capturing of the city `by which" the main clause may be accomplished.

142

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

4. Reāx ut quōā pecuāniam pluās quam lōābertaātem amaāret bellum paraābat.

5. Mōāliteās peteābant id quod amaārent pluās quam pecuāniam.

8. Translate the following sentences.

1. Quid est quod tuā noān audeaās?

2. Tum deānique interācieāre cum iam neāmoā tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tui similis invenōārōā poterit quōā id noān iure factum esse fateaātur.

Quamdiu quisquam erit quōā deāfendere audeat, vōāves.

3. Quid est enim, Catilōāna, quod teā iam in haāc urbe deālectaāre possit, in quaā neāmoā est, extra istam coniuāraātioānem perditōārum hominum quōā teā

noān metuat, neāmo quōā noān oāderit?

4. Mittitur Deacidius cum paucis quos locum natuam perspiciat.

5. Accipite nunc, quaeso, non ea quae ipse in se atque in domesticum decus impure et intemperanter, sed quae in non fortunaque, id est in universam rem publicam, impie ac nefarie fecerit.

6. Quid enim me interponerem audaciae tuae quam neque auctoritas huius ordinis neque existimatio populi Romanorum neque leges ullae possent coercere?

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

143

Vocabulary

audeo, aude, ausum sum

dare

denique (adv.)

①nally

inter①cioÅ, inter①cere

kill

neÅmoÅ, neÅminis

nobody

improbus, -a, -um

base, depraved

similis, -e

similar

invenioÅ, invenōÅre

①nd

iuÅre

rightly

fateor, fateÅrōÅ, fassus sum

confess

quamdiuÅ (adv.)

as long as

deÅfendoÅ, deÅfendere

defend

vōÅvoÅ, vōÅvere

live

enim

indeed

CatilōÅna, -ae, m.

Catiline

deÅlectoÅ, deÅlectaÅre

please, delight

coniuÅraÅtioÅ, -oÅnis, f.

conspiracy

metuoÅ, metuere

fear

oŕdō, oŕdisse

hate

Deŕcidius, -ō, m.

Decidius

paucō, -ae, -a

few

locus, -ō, m.

place

naŕtura, -ae, f.

nature

perspicio, perspicere

look over, inspect

accipio, accipere

receive, hear

quaeso

please

domesticus, -a, -um

domestic, private

decus, decoris, n.

honor

impure (adv.)

impurely, basely

intemperanter (adv.)

intemperately

universis, -a, -um

whole, entire

impie (adv.)

impiously

nefarie (adv.)

monstrously

144

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

quid

(here) why?

interpono, interponere

place as an obstacle, interpose

audacia, -ae, f.

audacity

auctoritas, -tatis, f.

authority

ordo, ordinis

order, body of men

existimatio, -onis, f.

judgment, opinion

lex, legis, f.

law

coerceo, coerceo

restrain, confine

Participles Revisited

Participles, as stated before, are verbal adjectives. As such, they modify nouns.

Militēs canentes templum destruxerunt. The singing soldiers destroyed the temple.

Here the participle functions simply as an adjective, giving us information about the soldiers.

We could also translate this participle more as an adverb, telling us something about how the soldiers performed the action of the main verb: Singing, the soldiers destroyed the temple.

Although the example above is quite simple, participles can often extend this more adverbial usage to do the work of entire subordinate clauses. For example, they may have temporal force, simply correlating their action in time with the main verb:

Militēs urbem capientes templum

When they were capturing the city, they

destruxerunt.

destroyed the temple.

They may have causal force, explaining the action of the main verb: *Mōlite urbem capiente gaudebant.*

Because they were capturing the city, the soldiers were happy.

The presence of the word *tamen* may show that a participle is being used concessively:

Mōlite urbem capiente templum

Although they were capturing the city,

tamen nō delevērunt.

nevertheless the soldiers did not destroy the temple.

A participle can act as the protasis of a conditional sentence. When it does, the main verb will indicate what type of conditional sentence it is.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

145

Mōlite urbem capiente templum

If the soldiers capture the city, they will

delevēbunt.

destroy the temple.

The future indicative *delevēbunt* indicates a future-more-vivid conditional sentence.

Mōlite urbem capiente templum

If the soldiers were capturing the city,

delevērent.

they would be destroying the temple.

The imperfect subjunctive *delevērent* indicates a present contrary-to-fact conditional sentence.

Urbs capta delevēta esset.

If it had been captured, the city would

have been destroyed.

The pluperfect subjunctive *delevēta esset* indicates a past contrary-to-fact conditional sentence.

Although in an isolated sentence like this such different possibilities may seem arbitrary, the actual context of written Latin will make it easier to see how best to translate such hard-working participles.

Exercise

9. Translate the following using as many of the above senses of the participle as is reasonably possible.

1. Poëtae canentō pecūniam reāx doānaābit.

2. Poëtae canentō reāx tamen pecūniam noān dedit.

3. Poëtae canentō reāx pecūniam doānaāret.

4. Poëtoās a mōlitibus captōs reāx pecūniam noān dedisset.

5. Reāx poëtoās a mōlitibus captōs pecūniam daāns a reāgōānaā ameātur.

Ablative Absolute

A participle together with the noun it modifies, both in the ablative case, form a construction known as the ablative absolute. Together they represent another set of circumstances that accompanies the main clause in the sentence.

Mōlitibus urbem capientibus reāx

With the soldiers capturing the city, the

king was afraid.

king was afraid.

146

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Although it lacks a subordinating conjunction, the ablative absolute is like a subordinate clause in that it cannot stand on its own. However, its subject must be different from that of the main clause.⁵

Litterōs recitātōs reāx gemuit.

With the letter having been read, the

king groaned.

Like other participles, the participle in an ablative absolute may have different meanings based on context:

Because the letter had been read, the king groaned.

When the letter had been read, the king groaned.

Although the letter had been read, the king groaned.

Relative time applies. Whatever the force of *recitata*, its perfect tense shows time prior to that of the main verb *gemuit*.

Rege moriente, regina tamen

Although the king was dying, the queen

discessit.

departed.

The present participle shows time simultaneous with the perfect *discessit*. *Tamen* indicates that the ablative absolute should be translated as a concessive clause.

Poetae interfecti rex tamen timebat.

Although the poets had been killed,

nevertheless, the king was afraid.

The perfect participle shows time prior to the main verb.

An ablative absolute can function as the protasis of a conditional sentence: *Militibus captis, rex non timisset.*

If the soldiers had been captured, the

king would not have been afraid.

The pluperfect subjunctive *timisset* indicates that the sentence is a past contrary-to-fact conditional sentence.

Sometimes an ablative absolute will not contain a participle, but another noun or adjective in the ablative that acts as a predicate: *Poeta rex felix erit regina.*

If the poet is king, the queen will be

happy.

Here *rex* is predicate to the subject. The verb *sum*, 'to be,' has no participle that could be used here, but the sense may be supplied.

Exercises

10. Translate the following.

1. *Servis fugientibus, milite urbem delevērunt.*

5 "Absolute" in this sense means free from connection to the main clause.

6 When the singular of the present participle is used in an ablative absolute, it takes the ending *-e* instead of *-o*.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

147

2. Servōs fugientibus, mōlite urbem deleābunt.

3. Servōs fugientibus mōlite urbem deleārent.

4. Urbe a mōlitibus deleāta imperātor claāavit se esse reāgem.

5. Urbe a mōlitibus deleāta imperātor se esse reāgem claāavisset.

6. Urbe a mōlitibus deleāta imperātor se esse reāgem claāābit.

7. Imperāto re esse reāgem claāante servō ex urbe fugieābant.

8. Imperāto re reāge servō multum timeābunt.

9. Imperāto re reāge servō multum timuissent.

10. Imperāto re se esse reāgem urbis claāante mōlite tamen discesseārunt.

11. Translate the following sentences.

1. Itaque vasta^{at} omnibus eorum agr^os, v^oc^os aedi^oci^osque ince^os^os, Caesar exercitum redu^oxit et in h^ohemi^os colloca^ovit.

2. Exigua^o parte aesta^otis reliqua^o Caesar tamen in Britanniam pro^oc^osc^oo contendit.

3. Et s^ocut vetus aeta^os v^odit quid ultimum in liberta^ote esset, ita no^os quid in servitu^ote, adempto^o per inqu^oo^oatio^one^os etiam loquend^oo audiend^oo^oque commercio^o.

148

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Vocabulary

itaque (adv.)

and so

vasto^o, vasta^ore

lay waste, destroy

agrum, -^o, n.

o^oeld

v^oo^ocus, -^o, m.

village

aedi^oo^ocium, -^o, n.

building

incendo, incendere

burn

Caesar, Caesaris, m.

Caesar

exercitus, -us, m.

army

reducere, reducere

lead back

hiberna, -orum, n. pl.

winter camp

collocare, collocare

put in place, settle, locate

exiguus, -a, -um

small

aestas, -atis, f.

summer

relinquere, -a, -um

remaining, left over

Britannia, -ae, f.

Britain

proferre, profectus sum

set forth

contendere, contendere

make an effort, hurry

vetus, veteris

old

aetas, -atis, f.

time, age

ultimus, -a, -um

furthest, most extreme

libertas, -tatis, f.

liberty

servitus, -tutis, f.

slavery

auferre, auferere, aufero, auferre

remove, take away

in iudicio, -iudicis, f.

trial

loquor, loquor, locutus sum

speak

commercium, -um, n.

exchange, commerce

Indirect Statement

An indirect statement is the reporting of another statement, originally 'direct.'

Direct:

The poets are working in the field.

Indirect:

He says that the poets are working in the field.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

149

English uses the conjunction "that" to make a subordinate clause of the original direct statement.

Latin does not express indirect statement by subordinate clause. Instead, it uses a subject accusative and infinitive construction. That is, the subject of the statement given in indirect form will be put into the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive:

Dicit poetas in agro laborare.

He says that the poets are working in the

field.

The English word "that" must be supplied in the translation, though the Latin does not have it.

Any word signifying thought, speech, feeling, rumor, etc. can initiate an indirect statement:

Rumor erat poetas in agro

There was a rumor that the poets were

laboŕaŕe.

working in the ŕeld.

Remember that, like participles, infinitives in Latin show only three tenses: present, perfect, and future. Also like participles, infinitives in an indirect statement must be translated according to the rules of relative time.

The present infinitive shows time simultaneous with that of the main verb: *Dŕcebat poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕe.*

He said that the poets were working in

the ŕeld.

Here the present infinitive *laboŕaŕe* shows time simultaneous with the main verb *dŕcebat* in the imperfect tense and so is translated 'were working.'

Dŕcet poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕe.

He will say that the poets are working.⁷

The perfect infinitive shows time prior to that of the main verb: *Dŕcit poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕiŕe.*

He says that the poets worked in the

ŕeld.

Dŕcebat poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕiŕe.

He said that the poets had worked in the

ŕelds.

Dŕcet poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕiŕe.

He will say that the poets have worked in

the ŕelds.

The future infinitive shows time subsequent to that of the main verb: *Dŕcit poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕtuŕoŕeŕe.*

He says that the poets will work in the

ŕeld.

Dŕcebat poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕtuŕoŕeŕeŕe.

He said that the poets would work in the

esse.

ŕeld.

Dŕcet poŕtaŕ in agroŕ laboŕaŕtuŕoŕeŕeŕeŕe.

He will say that the poets will work in

the ŕeld.

7 Here the English says 'are working.' It means they will be working at the same time as he says it.

150

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Note that the form of the future infinitive *laboŕaŕtuŕoŕs esse* must agree in gender, number, and case with the subject accusative *poeŕtaŕs*, which is masculine accusative plural.

A subject of different gender and number would require a different form: *Dŕcit feŕminaŕm in agroŕ laboŕaŕtuŕam*

He says that the woman will work in the

esse.

ŕeld.

Here *laboŕaŕtuŕam* agrees with the feminine noun *feŕminam*.

This consideration also applies to the perfect passive infinitive: *Dŕcit urbem captam esse*.

He says that the city was captured.

Here *captam* must agree with the feminine *urbem*.

Exercises

12. Translate the following. Pay particular attention to the relative time of the infinitive and the main verb.

1. *Putamus reŕgŕŕnam esse miseram.*

2. *Putamus reŕgŕŕnam miseram fuisse.*

3. *Putamus reŕgŕŕnam cum nobŕs noŕn locuŕtuŕam esse.*

4. *Putat matreŕs mŕlitum mortuoŕum ad mare ambulaŕe.*

5. *Putabat matreŕs mŕlitum mortuoŕum ad mare ambulaŕisse.*

6. RuĀmor est maĀtreĀs mōĀlitum mortuoĀrum ad mare ambulaĀtuĀraĀs esse.

7. RuĀmor erat matreĀs mōĀlitum mortuoĀrum ad mare ambulaĀtuĀraĀs esse.

8. DōĀcit animaĀlia aĀ puerōĀs spectaĀrōĀ.

9. DōĀcit animaĀlia aĀ puerōĀs spectaĀta esse.

10. DōĀxit animaĀlia a pueĀrōĀs spectaĀrōĀ.

11. DōĀxit animaĀlia a pueĀrōĀs spectaĀtaĀ esse.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

151

12. DōĀxit pueroĀs animaĀlia spectatuĀros esse.

13. DōĀxit animaĀlia pueroĀs spectatuĀra esse.

14. NeĀmoĀ creĀdit reĀgem poeĀtaĀs interfectuĀrum esse.

15. Quis creĀdat reĀgem poĀetaĀs interfeĀcisse?

13. Translate the following sentences.

1. CreĀdibile est igitur tantum facinus nullam ob causam esse commis-sum?

2. Iam intelligeĀs multoĀ meĀ vigilaĀre aĀcrius ad saluĀtem quam teĀ ad perniciem reōĀ puĀblicaē.

3. Dolebam, dolebam, patres conscriptos, rem publicam vestros quondam meosque consilio conservatam brevi tempore esse perituram.

4. Sunt enim philosophi et fuerunt quos omnino nullam habere censerent rerum humanae proacuratioem deos. Quorum sola vera sententia est, quae potest esse pietas, quae sanctitas, quae religio. . . Sunt autem alii philosophi, et hos quidem magnos atque nobiles, quos deorum mente atque ratione omnem mundum administrare et regere censeant. . .

5. Homo disertus non intelligit eum quem contra docet laudare a se; eos apud quos docet vituperare.

igitur (adv.)
therefore, then
facinus, facinoris, n.
crime
committo, committere
commit
intelligo, intelligere
understand, discern
vigilo, vigila
keep watch, stay awake
acer, -cris, -cre
sharp, keen
salus, -uatis, f.
health, safety
pernicie, -e, f.
destruction, ruin
doleo, dole
grieve, be in pain
patres conscripti
senators
consilium, -ia, n.
advice, planning
quondam (adv.)
at some time in the past, formerly
conservo, conserva
save, preserve
brevis, -e
brief, short
pereō, perire, peri, perire
perish, die

enim

for

philosophus, -ŏs, m.

philosopher

omnino (adv.)

entirely

consequere

judge

humani, -a, -um

of humans

procuratio, -o, f.

concern, care, responsibility

verus, -a, -um

true

sententia, -ae, f.

opinion, thought

pietas, -tatis, f.

devotion, loyalty

sanctitas, -tatis, f.

moral purity, sanctity

religio, -o, f.

religion

autem

moreover

quidem

indeed

nobilis, -e

noble

ratio, -o, f.

reason, reckoning

mundus, -ũ, m.

world

administro, administrare

conduct, manage, administer

rego, regere

rule

8 The fourth principal part given here is the future active participle.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

153

disertus, -a, -um

learned, clever

intelligo, intelligere

understand

laudo, laudare

praise

vitupero, vituperare

criticize

Indirect Question

Questions in Latin are often introduced by interrogative words or expressions such as the following:

quis, quid

who, what

quo modo

how

quam ob rem

why

cu

why

quando

when

ubi

where

unde

from where

CuÅr claÅmaÅvit?

Why did he shout?

Unde venis?

Where are you coming from?

An indirect question, as the name suggests, is a question reported in indirect form. Latin expresses indirect questions as subordinate clauses. The interrogative word of the original question acts as a subordinating conjunction, and the verb of the original direct question goes into the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

Quis hoc dõÅcit?

Who says this?

Rogat quis hoc dõÅcat.

He asks who says this.

The original direct question is now subordinated to the main verb rogat.

The present subjunctive expresses time simultaneous with the main verb in primary sequence. (It stands for an original present indicative.) Rogat quis hoc dõÅxerit.

He asks who said that.

The perfect subjunctive expresses time prior to the main verb in secondary sequence.

Because there is no future subjunctive, to express time subsequent to the main verb in an indirect question, Latin uses the subjunctive of the active periphrastic (see p. 63).

Rogat quis hoc dictuÅrus sit.

He asks who is going to (will) say this.

Here the present subjunctive of the active periphrastic is used in primary sequence.

In secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive expresses time simultaneous with the main verb:

RogaÅvit quis hoc dõÅceret.

He asked who was saying this.

154

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses time prior to that of the main verb: RogaÅvit quis hoc dõÅxisset.

He asked who had said this.

To express time subsequent to the main verb in secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive of the active

periphrastic is used: *Rogavit quis hoc dicturus esset.*

He asked who was going to say this.

Direct questions may not always be introduced by an interrogative word: *Laborat?*

Does he work?

In such cases Latin may use the word *utrum* or the interrogative enclitic *-ne*.

Rogabo laboretne.

I ask whether he works.

Rogabo utrum laboret.

Exercises

14. Translate the following.

1. *Moriamur cum clameas.*

2. *Mirabamur cum clavisissetis.*

3. *Nescio cum claverint.*

4. *Scotis quibus rex aurum donatus sit?*

5. *Sciebatis cui rex aurum donatus esset.*

6. *Mihi dicere noluit quo modo milites urbem delevisent.*

7. *Neamo mihi dicere potest quam ob rem urbs a militibus deleatur.*

8. *Dic mihi a quo interfectus sit rex.*

9. Roga vit cu ar non ama re amur.

10. Quis roga vit cu ar no an ama to esse amus?

15. Translate the following sentences.

1. Ego quid ille et contra ille quid ego sent o rem et specta rem vide bat.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

155

2. Ille quid ego et contra ego quid ille sent o ret et specta ret vide bam.

3. Quae fuit enim causa quam ob rem isto mulier o vene num dare vellet Caelius? . . . Sed tamem vene num unde fuerit, quem ad modum para tum sit no an do citur.

4. Itaque hodie per ciam ut intelligat quantum a me bene cium tum acce perit.

5. Et sicut vetus aetas vedit quid ultimum in libertate esset, ita nos quid in servitute, adempto per inquitio neas etiam loquendo audiendo que commercio.

Vocabulary

contra (adv.)

on the other side, on the other hand

sentio, sentire

feel, think

specto, spectare

look at, watch for

iste, ista, istud

that (often with contempt)

mulier, mulieris, f.

woman

venenum, -um, n.

poison

unde

from where?

quem ad modum

in what manner?

itaque

and so, in this manner

hodie (adv.)

today

perficere, perficere

accomplish, effect

intelligo, intelligere

understand

quantus, -a, -um

how great?

beneficium, -um, n.

benefit, favor

tum

at that time

accipio, accipere

receive, take, accept

156

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

vetus, veteris

old

aetas, -ta, f.

time, age

ultimus, -a, -um

furthest, most extreme

libertas, -ta, f.

liberty

servitus, -tu, f.

slavery

adimo, adimere, ademptus

remove, take away

inquitio, -o, f.

trial

loquor, loquor, locutus sum

speak

commercium, -o, n.

exchange, commerce

Exercise

16. (Advanced reading) Translate the following passage and do the exercise at the end.

In this opening passage from his speech *Pro Caelio*, Cicero comments on the unusual nature of a trial that is taking place on a public holiday, when the courts would normally be closed.

Sed quis, iudice, forte nunc adsit ignarus legum, iudicio, consuetudinis nostrae, miretur profecto quae sit tanta atrocitas huius causae quod diebus festis ludisque publicis, omnibus forensibus negotiis intermissis, unum hoc iudicium exerceatur, nec dubitet quoniam tantum facinoris reus arguatur ut eo neglecto civitas stare non possit;

(The passage continues on p. 160.)

Vocabulary

iudex, iudicis, m.

judge

forte

perhaps

adsum, adesse

be present

ignarus, -a, -um

ignorant, without knowledge

(gen.)

lex, legis, f.

law

iudicium, ò, n.

trial

consuetudo, -tu, -dinis, f.

habit, practice

mòror, mòrò, mòrus sum

wonder

profecto

undoubtedly

tantus, -a, -um

so great

atrocitas, -ta, -tis, f.

terribleness

causa, -ae, f.

case

die festus

holiday

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

157

ludus, ò, m.

game, entertainment

pu**Å**blicus, -a, -um

public

forensis, -e

pertaining to the law courts

nego**Å**tium, -õ**Å**, n.

business

intermitto**Å**, intermittere, intermõ**Å**sõ**Å**, intermissus interrupt, suspend

exerceo**Å**, exerce**Å**re

exercise, practice, conduct

facinus, facinoris, n.

crime

reus, -õ**Å**, m.

defendant

arguo**Å**, arguere

accuse

neglego**Å**, neglegere, negle**Å**xõ**Å**, negle**Å**ctus

neglect

cõ**Å**vita**Å**s, -ta**Å**tis, f.

citizenry, state

sto**Å**, sta**Å**re

stand

Exercise

1. Identify and explain the tense and mood of adsit.

2. Identify and explain the tense and mood of mõ**Å**re**Å**tur.

3. Identify and explain the tense and mood of *sit*.

4. Explain the case of *diebus festis*.

5. What kind of construction is *omnibus forensibus negotiis intermissis*?

6. Identify and explain the tense and mood of *arguatur*.

158

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

7. Identify and explain the tense and mood of *possit*.

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

The section above on indirect statement deals with the indirect expression of simple sentences consisting of one independent clause. Such a clause, in indirect form, puts its subject in the accusative case and its verb in the infinitive.

When complex sentences are put into indirect statement, the main and subordinate clauses behave differently. The main clause, as explained above, takes the subject accusative and infinitive construction. Subordinate clauses generally put their verbs into the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence and relative time.

Quamquam urbs delectur poetae

Although the city is being destroyed,

tamen manent.

nevertheless the poets are remaining.

Dicit quamquam urbs delectur,

He says that although the city is being

poetae tamen manent.

destroyed, nevertheless the poets are

remaining.

The present subjunctive stands for an original present indicative in primary sequence, expressing time simultaneous with the main verb.

Sometimes the subject and infinitive may enclose the subordinate clause: Dicit poetae quamquam urbs delectur manent tamen.

In secondary sequence, only the subordinate clause is affected.

Dixit quamquam urbs delectur,

He said that although the city was being

poetae tamen manent.

destroyed, nevertheless the poets were

remaining.

Now the imperfect subjunctive stands for the original present indicative in secondary sequence, expressing time simultaneous with the main verb.

All the considerations of relative time will apply in translation: Dixit quamquam urbs delecta esset,

He said that although the city had been

poetae tamen mansuro esse.

destroyed, nevertheless the poets

would remain.

Here the pluperfect subjunctive delecta esset represents time prior to the main verb dixit in a subordinate clause in indirect statement in secondary sequence. The future infinitive represents time subsequent to that of the main

verb.

Subordinate clauses that normally take the subjunctive, not surprisingly, will still take the subjunctive in indirect statement:

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

159

Cum urbs deŕleatur, poetae fugient.

Because the city is being destroyed, the poets will flee.

Dicit cum urbs deŕleatur, poetas

He says that because the city is being
fugituros esse.

destroyed, the poets will flee.

Relative Clauses in Indirect Statement

Relative clauses in indirect statement also take the subjunctive: Rex quod urbem deŕleavit deŕmens est.

The king who destroyed the city is

insane.

Dicit regem quod urbem deŕleaverit

He says that the king who destroyed the
deŕmentem esse.

city is insane.

Here the perfect subjunctive deŕleaverit represents time prior to the main verb dicit in a relative clause in indirect statement in primary sequence.

Dixit regem quod urbem deŕleavisset

He said that the king who had destroyed

deŕmentem esse.

the town was mad.

Here the pluperfect subjunctive deŕleavisset represents time prior to the main verb dixit in a relative clause in indirect statement in secondary structure.

Sometimes, however, relative clauses inside an indirect statement will take the indicative. This usually means that the writer of the sentence is giving this information, adding it to the original direct statement: Dicit regem quod urbem deŕleavit

He says that the king who (I am actually

de mentem esse.

telling you) destroyed the city is mad.

Although this translation is somewhat exaggerated, it is meant to show the difference between the indicative and subjunctive. The indicative tells you that the relative clause has been inserted by the writer, or at least that he confirms the truth of its contents.

Exercises

17. Translate the following sentences.

1. Quod de lōbertate clamant rex poetarum intercit.

2. Regōna dicit regem quod de lōbertate clamant poetarum intercere.

160

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

3. Regōna dicebat regem quod de lōbertate clamarent poetarum intercere.

4. Regōna dicit regem quod de lōbertate clamaverint poetarum interfecisse.

5. Regōna dicit regem poetarum quod de lōbertate clamaverint interfecturum esse.

6. Regōna dicebat regem poetarum quod de lōbertate clamarent interfecisse.

7. ReAgōAna dōAceAbat reAgem poeAtaAs quod deA lōAbertaAte claAmaAvissent interfectuArum esse.

8. ReAgōAna dōAceAbat reAgem quōA populum timeAret poeAtaAs quod deA lōAbertaAte claAmaAvissent interfeAcisse.

9. ReAgōAna dōAceAbat reAgem quōA populum timeAret poeAtaAs quod deA lōAbertaAte claAmaArent interfectuArum esse.

18. (Advanced reading; continued from p. 156) Translate the following passage and do the exercise at the end.

IAdem cum audiat esse leAgem quae deA seAditioAsōAs conscleraAtōAsque cōAvibus quōA

armaAtōA senaAtum obseAderint, magistraAtibus vim attulerint, rem puAblicam oppugnaAverint, coAtōAdieA quaerōA iubeat, leAgem noAn improbet, crōAmen quod verseAtur in iudicioA requōArat; cum audiat nullum facinus, nullam audaAciam, nullam vim in iuAdicium vocaArōA, sed adulescentem illustrōA ingenioA, industriaA, graAtiaA accuAsaArōA ab eAius fōAlioA quem ipse in iuAdicium et vocet et vocaAverit, oppugnaArōA autem opibus meretrōAcius, illōAus pietaAtem noAn reprehendat, muliebrem libōAdinem comprimendam putet, voAs laboArioAsos existimet, quibus otioAsōAs neA in commuAnōA quidem oAtioA liceat esse.

(This passage continues on p. 165.)

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

161

in̄ict violence upon

oppugnoĀ, oppugnaĀre

attack

coĀtōĀdieĀ (adv.)

everyday, daily

quaeroĀ, quaerere

(here) hold a trial or inquiry

iubeoĀ, iubeĀre

command

improboĀ, improbaĀre

disapprove

crōĀmen, crōĀminis, n.

crime, criminal charge

versoĀ, versaĀre

handle

iuĀdicium, -ōĀ, n.

trial

requōĀroĀ, requōĀrere

ask

facinus, facinoris, n.

crime

audaĀcia, -ae, f.

outrageous boldness

vocoĀ, vocaĀre

call

adulescens, -ntis, m.

young man

162

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

illustris, -e

outstanding, illustrious

ingenium, -ō, n.

talent

industria, -ae, f.

diligence

gratitudo, -ae, f.

favor, influentia

accusatio, accusare

accuse

autem

moreover

opus, opis, f.

wealth, resources

meretrices, -a, -um

of a prostitute

pietas, -tatis, f.

loyalty, devotion

reprehensio, reprehendere

find fault with

muliebris, -e

pertaining to a woman

libido, -inis, f.

lust

comprimere, comprimere

suppress, check

puto, putare

think

laboriosus, -a, -um

very hard-working

existimo, existimare

judge, reckon

otioſus, -a, -um

at leisure, on vacation

neſſe . . . quidem

not even

communis, -e

belonging to all

otium, -ſ, n.

leisure

Exercise

1. Explain the case of legem.

2. Explain the tense and mood of obſiderint.

3. Explain the case of illuſtratio ingenioſi.

4. Explain the tense and mood of vocet.

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Statement

Conditional sentences generally follow the same rules as other complex sentences.

The protasis, since it is a subordinate clause, will put its verb into the subjunctive.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

163

The apodosis, since it is an independent clause, will take a subject accusative and infinitive construction.

Poeta ſolus laborat felix est.

If the poet works, he is happy.

DŏĀcit poeĀtam sŏĀ laboĀret feĀlŏĀcem esse.

He says that if the poet works, he is

happy.

In this simple condition, the present subjunctive laboĀret represents the original present indicative of the protasis, and the present infinitive esse the present indicative of the apodosis.

DŏĀceĀbat poeĀtam sŏĀ laboĀraĀret feĀlŏĀcem

He said that if the poet worked, he was

esse.

happy.

In secondary sequence it is the imperfect subjunctive laboĀraĀret that represents the original present indicative.

Future conditional sentences show an interesting simplification. Because of the limited choices of subjunctive and infinitive to represent them, the more-vivid and less-vivid varieties (see pp. 135±136) become the same: SŏĀ urbs deĀleĀbitur, poeĀtae maneĀbunt.

If the city is destroyed, the poets will

remain.

DŏĀcit sŏĀ urbs deĀleĀtur, poeĀtaĀs

He says that if the city is destroyed, the

mansuĀroĀs esse.

poets will remain.

In primary sequence the future indicative of the protasis is represented by the present subjunctive, and that of the apodosis by the future infinitive.

SŏĀ urbs deĀleĀtur, poeĀtae maneant.

If the city should be destroyed, the poets

would remain.

DŏĀcit sŏĀ urbs deĀleĀtur, poeĀtaĀs

He says that if the city should be

mansuĀroĀs esse.

destroyed, the poets would remain.

The present subjunctive of the protasis remains the same, and the present subjunctive of the apodosis is represented by the future infinitive because there is really no other option.

In secondary sequence, the protasis will take the imperfect subjunctive: DŏĀceĀbat sŏĀ urbs deĀleĀreĀtur poeĀtaĀs

He said that if the city were destroyed,

mansuŕroŕs esse.

the poets would remain.

Contrary-to-fact conditions obey their own rule. The subjunctive of the protasis does not change at all, regardless of sequence; it remains the same. The subjunctive of the apodosis, for both past and present contrary-to-fact sentences, is represented by the future active participle with the perfect infinitive of *sum*, that is, *fuisse*.

Present

Nisŕŕ urbs deŕleŕeŕtur, poeŕtae maneŕent.

If the city were not being destroyed, the

poets would remain.

164

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Dŕŕcit nisŕŕ urbs deŕleŕeŕtur, poeŕtaŕs

He says that if the city were not being

mansuŕroŕs fuisse.

destroyed, the poets would remain.

In secondary sequence this will remain the same:

Dŕŕŕeŕbat nisŕŕ urbs deŕleŕeŕtur, poeŕtaŕ mansuŕroŕs fuisse.

Past

Nisŕŕ urbs deŕleŕta esset, poeŕtae

If the city had not been destroyed, the

mansissent.

poets would have remained.

Dŕŕŕcit nisŕŕ urbs deŕleŕta esset, poeŕtas

He says that if the city had not been

mansuŕroŕs fuisse.

destroyed, the poets would have

remained.

As you can see, what distinguishes present from past contrary-to-fact conditions in indirect statement is only the tense of the subjunctive in the protasis.

Exercises

19. Translate the following sentences. Then identify what type of conditional sentence has been put into indirect

statement.

1. DōĀcōĀt sōĀ bellum in proĀvinciaĀ geraĀtur, agricolaĀs fugere.

2. DōĀcit sōĀ bellum in proĀvinciaĀ geraĀtur, agricolaĀs fugituroĀs esse.

3. DōĀceĀbat sōĀ bellum in proĀvinciaĀ gerereĀtur, agricolaĀs fugituroĀs esse.

4. DōĀcit sōĀ bellum in proĀvinciaĀ gerereĀtur, agricolaĀs fugituroĀs fuisse.

5. DōĀcit sōĀ bellum in proĀvinciaĀ gestum esset, agricolaĀs fugituroĀs fuisse.

6. DōĀceĀbat sōĀ bellum in proĀvinciaĀ gestum esset, agricolaĀs fugituroĀs fuisse.

20. (Advanced reading) (continued from p. 160) Translate the following passage.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

165

Etenim sōĀ attendere dōĀligenter, existimaĀre veĀreĀ deĀ omnōĀ haĀc causaĀ volueritis, sōĀc constitueĀtis, iuĀdiceĀs, nec descensuĀrum quemquam ad hanc accuĀsatioĀnem fuisse cui utrum vellet liceĀret, nec, cum descensisset, quicquam habituĀrum speōĀ fuisse nisōĀ alicuius intoleraĀbilōĀ libōĀdine et nimis acerboĀ odioĀ nōĀtereĀtur.

anyone, anything

intolerabilis, -e

unendurable, intolerable

libido, -inis, f.

lust

nimis (adv.)

excessively, too much

odium, -i, n.

hatred

nocturnus, nocturna, nocturnus sum

rest on, rely upon (abl.)

``Fore ut" Clause

This is a subordinate clause introduced by fore, the future infinitive of sum, and the subordinating conjunction ut. (Fore is actually an alternative and more commonly used construction. This construction might also be considered a substantive clause of result acting as the subject of fore. See p. 129.)

166

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

used form for futurus esse, which may also be used in these constructions. See p. 67.) This construction is used in two different cases.

Because, practically speaking, there is no future passive infinitive in Latin, a future passive idea cannot be expressed in indirect statement with the normal subject accusative and infinitive construction.

Urbs a militibus regis delebitur.

The city will be destroyed by the

soldiers of the king.

In such cases Latin uses the fore ut (less frequently, futurus esse ut) with the subjunctive;

Dicit fore ut urbs a militibus regis deleatur.

Literally, this means, ``He says that it will be that the city is destroyed by the soldiers of the king.'

However, it is best to combine the elements in translation to convey the future passive idea:

He says that the city will be conquered by the soldiers of the king.

Dicitur fore ut urbs a militibus

He said that the city would be conquered

regis deleatur.

by the soldiers of the king.

Some Latin verbs lack a fourth principal part. Since the future active participle is formed from the fourth principal part, such verbs cannot form a future active infinitive and, so, will use a fore ut clause to express future ideas in indirect statement.

For example:

He says that the soldiers will not be able to destroy the city.

The verb "to be able" is *possum, posse, potuō*, . . .

Because this verb lacks a fourth principal part, a fore ut construction must be used to express this idea.

Dicit fore ut mōlite s urbem deleat

He says that it will be that the soldiers

no s possint.

are unable to destroy the city.

He says that the soldiers will be unable to destroy the city.

Dicit fore ut mōlite s urbem deleat

He said that the soldiers would be

no s possent.

unable to destroy the city.

Exercise

21. Translate the following sentences.

1. *Regōna putat fore ut poetae a rege intericiantur.*

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

167

2. *Regōna putabat fore ut poetae a rege intercerentur.*

3. *Regōna credit fore ut illo die cōve s regem timeant.*

4. *Regōna credebat fore ut illo die cōve s regem timeant.*

5. RuÅmor erat fore ut reÅx poeÅtaÅs quoÅs reÅgõÅna ceÅlaÅvisset inter@cere noÅn posset.

Impersonal Verbs

Impersonal verbs are so called because they do not have personal subjects. They take a small variety of constructions.

VERBS OF EMOTIONAL DISTRESS

Some impersonal verbs express a variety of unpleasant emotions: piget, pigeÅre, piguit
to disgust

taedet, taedeÅre, taedit

to weary

paenitet, paeniteÅre, paenituit

to cause repentance

puget, pudeÅre, pudit

to shame

Such verbs put the person who feels the emotion in the accusative case.

PoeÅtam piget.

The poet is disgusted.

The cause of the emotion may be expressed as a neuter nominative singular pronoun:

Hoc poeÅtam piget.

This thing disgusts the poet.

The cause of the emotion may be expressed by the in@nitive: PoeÅtam piget võÅvere.

It disgusts the poet to live.

The cause of the emotion may be expressed in the genitive case: PoeÅtam taedet võÅtae.

Life wearies the poet.

The poet is weary of life.

ReÅgem avaÅritiae noÅn pudet.

Avarice does not shame the king.

The king is not ashamed of avarice.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Sometimes such verbs will take a subordinate clause introduced by *quod*, 'that.'

Such clauses take the indicative:

Poetae regem quod urbem destruxerat indignabatur.

That the king destroyed the city disgusted

the poet.

VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS OF PERMISSION AND NECESSITY

A few impersonal verbs express necessity or obligation: *licet*, *licere*, *licuit*

to be permitted

oportet, *oportere*, *oportuit*

to be necessary, 'it is necessary'

debet, *debere*, *debet*

it is right

necesse est

it is necessary

Such verbs may take an accusative and infinitive construction: *Oportet poetam canere.*

It is necessary that the poet sing.

Non licet mihi vivere.

It was not permitted for me to live.

They may take the infinitive with the dative case:

Necesse est poetae canere.

It is necessary for the poet to sing.

They may take a subordinate clause introduced by *ut* taking the subjunctive: *Non licet mihi ut poetae taceant.*

It was not permitted that the poets keep

silent.

VERBS OF INTEREST

There are two impersonal verbs that express 'interest' or concern: *interest*, *interesse*

it concerns, interests

refert, *referre*

it concerns, interests

Such verbs put the person concerned in the genitive.

The source of concern may be a neuter singular pronoun: Hoc reÅgis reÅfert.

This thing concerns the king.

The source of concern may be an in®nitive or accusative and in®nitive: PoeÅtae reÅfert bene canere.

To sing well concerns the poet.

ReÅgis interest poeÅtam morõÅ.

That the poet die concerns the king.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

169

The source of concern may be a subordinate clause introduced by ut taking the subjunctive:

ReÅgis interest ut poeÅta moriaÅtur.

That the poet die concerns the king.

The source of concern may be an indirect question:

ReÅgis noÅn interest utrum opera poeÅtae It does not concern the king whether the sint bona.

works of the poet are good.

If the person concerned would be expressed with a pronoun, i.e., 'it interests him, her, etc.,' rather than use that pronoun in the genitive, these verbs use the possessive adjective in the feminine ablative singular:10

MeaÅ reÅfert ut poeÅtae serventur.

It concerns me that the poets be saved.

VestraÅ interest utrum reÅx sit deÅmeÅns.

It concerns you whether the king is

insane.

Exercises

22. Translate the following.

1. Quod reÅx bellum parat cõÅveÅs taedet.

2. PoeÅtae noÅn reÅfert utrum reÅx libroÅs deÅleat.

3. Poeta dicit fore ut omnes libros delectentur.

4. Avartitiae regis omnes piget.

5. Omnium interest ut libertas servetur.

6. Taedet regum regem videre.

7. Tuam maxime interest abesse.

10 This feminine ablative singular is understood to agree with the prefix re-, the ablative singular of the noun res.

Originally the expression was mea res fert "my interest bears" the res combining with fert to produce refert, in which the re perhaps appeared to have become ablative and occasioned the change from mea to mea. However, this use of the feminine ablative singular of the possessive also works for the verb interest, with no re anywhere in sight.

170

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

8. Necesserit omnibus civibus hunc librum legere.

9. Necesserit ut hic liber ab omnibus civibus legatur.

10. Non licebat nobis ut in pace viveremus.

23. Translate the following sentences.

1. In tanta laetitia cunctae civitatis me unum tristem esse oportebat?

2. Non tamen pigrebit vel incondita ac rube voce memoriam prioris servitutis ac testimonium praesentium bonorum composuisse.

3. Neque me molitum neque vos ducis paenituit.

4. Quando denique fuit ut quod licet non liceret?

5. Ad mortem te, Catilina, dum civis iussu consulis iam proadem oportebat; in te conferram pestem quam tu in nos machinaris.

6. Quid refert utrum voluerim erere an gaudeam factum?

Vocabulary

tantus, -a, -um

so great

laetitia, -ae, f.

happiness

cunctus, -a, -um

all, the whole

civitas, -atis, f.

citizenry, state

tristis, -e

depressed, sad

vel

even

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

171

inconditus, -a, -um

unpolished, rough

rudis, -e

crude, unfinished

vox, vocis, f.

voice

memoria, -ae, f.

memory, record

prior, prius

earlier, prior

servitus, -utis, f.

slavery

testimonium, òn, n.

testimony

praesens, -ntis

present, at hand

compono, componere, composuõ, compositus

compose, write

dux, ducis, m.

leader

deŃnique

Ńnally

mors, mortis, -ium, f.

death

CatilŃna, -ae, m.

Catiline

duŃcoŃ, duŃcere

lead

iussuŃ (abl.)

by order of (gen.)

coŃsul, coŃsulis, m.

consul

iam prŃdem

for a long time already

conferoŃ, conferre

bring, bestow, confer

pestis, pestis, f.

pestilence, destruction

maŃchinor, maŃchinaŃri, maŃchinaŃtus sum

devise, contrive

gaudeoŃ, gaudeŃre, gaŃvŃŃsus sum

be happy

The InŃnitive

The inŃnitive is a verbal noun, and as such it may be the subject of a sentence: Placet dormŃre.

It is pleasing to sleep.

VŃdisse lŃbertaŃtem bonum est.

It is good to have seen liberty.

Note that the adjective bonum takes the neuter singular. As nouns, inŃnitives are treated as neuter singular.

The inŃnitive may be the object of a transitive¹¹ verb: PoeŃta canere optat.

The poet chooses to sing.

MorōÅ praeferimus.

We prefer to die.

Some intransitive¹² verbs, such as *possum*, take the infinitive: *HomineÅ eÅrectōÅ ambulaÅre possunt*.

Men are able to walk upright.

¹¹ A transitive verb is one that takes a direct object.

¹² An intransitive verb is one that cannot take a direct object.

172

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

Such an infinitive is felt to complete the meaning of the verb and is called a complementary infinitive.

The infinitive may take a nominative subject and act as the main verb of a sentence:

MiliteÅs claÅmaÅre, fugere, capōÅ.

The soldiers shouted, ed, were
captured.

Because such usages of the infinitive occur most often among writers of historical narrative, they are called historical infinitives. Usually they appear in groups.

Gerund and Gerundive

The gerund serves as the verbal noun in the genitive, dative, and ablative cases, and in the accusative with certain prepositions. It will have the normal syntax associated with these different cases.

PoeÅtae est amor canendōÅ.

The poet has a love of singing.

Here the gerund *canendōÅ* is an objective genitive.

InterÅciendoÅ reÅx cōÅveÅs terret.

The king terrifies the inhabitants by
killing.

Here the gerund *interÅciendoÅ* is an ablative of means.

Although it is a verbal noun, the gerund tends not to govern a direct object. To express a direct object relationship, Latin uses the gerundive. The gerundive is a verbal adjective that, instead of governing a direct object in the accusative case, agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case:

InterÅciendōÅs poetōÅs reÅx cōÅveÅs terret.

The king will terrify the citizens by
killing poets.

The phrase *interÅciendōÅs poetōÅs* is in the ablative case as an ablative of means. It expresses the means by

which the king will terrify the citizens. Though "the poets"

would normally be expressed as a direct object in any other type of verbal expression, with the gerundive such a relationship is usually expressed by noun-adjective agreement.

Mōlitibus est timor urbis delendae.

The soldiers have a fear of destroying the city.

Again, in any other verbal expression, "the city" would be the direct object of the verb "to destroy":

Mōlite timent urbem delere.

The soldiers are afraid to destroy the city.

In the first example, however, the phrase *urbis delendae* functions as an objective genitive, so the noun and gerundive agree in that case.

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

173

The gerund and the gerundive in the accusative case with the preposition *ad* express purpose:

ReX mōlite mittit ad urbem delendam. The king sends soldiers for the purpose of destroying the city.

This meaning can also be expressed with the genitive followed by the preposition *causa*:¹³

ReX mōlite mittit urbis delendae

The king sends soldiers for the sake of *causa*.

destroying the city.

Supine

The supine is a verbal noun that exists only in the accusative and ablative cases (see Chapter 4, verbal noun section). The accusative is used to express purpose with a verb of motion:

ReX mōlite mittit urbem delatum.

The king sends soldiers to destroy the city.

The ablative is used to express respect or specification: *mōrabile dictu*
(a thing) wonderful to say.

Exercises

24. Translate the following.

1. Dulce est vovere?

2. Ad provinciam ob bellum vsum.

3. Ad provinciam ob ad bellum videndum.

4. Ad provinciam ob bellum videndum causa.

5. Poetas inter cere erat terribile factus.

13 This is really the ablative of the noun causa, which has this independent usage. It follows a noun in the genitive case and means 'for the sake of.'

174

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

6. In urbe manere poeta volebat.

7. Mollites urbem delectare timent.

8. Libertatis omnium delectandae causa rex poetas inter cere voluit.

25. Translate the following sentences.

1. O rem non modo vsum foedam sed etiam auditu!

2. Nōn igitur mōlieñs perōre est melius quam in sua cōvitate sine armaōrum praesidio nōn posse vōvere?

3. Dieŕs iam meŕ deŕciat sŕ quae dŕcŕ in eam sententiam possunt coŕner exproŕmere.

4. Pro meaŕ perpetuaŕ cupiditaŕe vetrae dŕgnitaŕis retinendae et augendae quaesoŕ oŕroŕque voŕs, patreŕs, conscriptŕ, ut prŕmoŕ, etsŕ erit vel acerbum audŕtuŕ vel increŕdibile aŕ Ciceroŕne dictum, accipiaŕis sine offensioŕne quod dŕxeroŕ, neŕve id prius quam quaŕle sit explicaŕveroŕ repudieŕis.

Vocabulary

noŕn modo

not only

foedus, -a, -um

foul

sed etiam

but also

igitur (adv.)

therefore

mŕlieŕns (adv.)

a thousand times

pereoŕ, perŕre

die, perish

cŕvitaŕs, -taŕis, f.

citizenry, state

CHAPTER 9 Syntax of the Complex Sentence

175

armaŃtus, -a, -um

armed

vŃvo, vŃvere

live

praesidium, -Ń, n.

protection

deŃcioŃ, deŃcere

be lacking, run out

sententia, -ae, f.

thought, opinion

coŃnor, coŃnaŃrŃ, coŃnaŃtus sum

try, attempt (inf.)

exproŃmoŃ, exproŃmere

bring out, reveal

perpetuus, -a, -um

perpetual

cupiditaŃs, -taŃtis, f.

desire

dŃgnitaŃs, -taŃtis, f.

dignity, prestige

retineoŃ, retineŃre

retain, keep, maintain

augeoŃ, augeŃre

increase

quaesoŃ

I ask

patreŃs conŃscriptŃ

senators

prōmo (adv.)

†rst

vel . . . vel

either . . . or

acerbus, -a, -um

bitter

incredibilis, -e

incredible

Cicero, -onis, m.

Cicero

accipio, accipere

accept, hear

offensio, -onis, f.

offense

neve

and not (subj.)

qualis, -e

how, of what kind

explico, explicare

explain

repudio, repudiare

reject, repudiate

This page intentionally left blank.

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 1

Dat.

puero

puerōs

Acc.

puerum

pueroꝰ

1. 1. Vocative

Abl.

pueroꝰ

puerōꝰ

2. Nominative

Voc.

puer

puerōꝰ

3. Genitive

3. Nom.

amōꝰcus

amōꝰcōꝰ

4. Accusative

Gen.

amōꝰcōꝰ

amōꝰcoꝰrum

5. Dative

Dat.

amōꝰcoꝰ

amōꝰcōꝰ

6. Ablative

Acc.

amōꝰcum

amōꝰcoꝰ

Abl.

amōꝰcoꝰ

amōꝰcōꝰ

2.

Sing.

Pl.

Voc.

amōĀce

amōĀcōĀ

Nom.

aqua

aquae

Gen.

aquae

aquaĀrum

6. 1. regna, regna

Dat.

aquae

aquōĀs

2. gladioĀrum

Acc.

aquam

aquaĀs

3. virōĀs, virōĀs

Abl.

aquaĀ

aquōĀs

4. librōĀ

5. numeroĀs

3. 1. puellaĀs

6. gaudia, gaudia

2. meĀnsaĀrum, meĀnsōĀs

7. puerōĀ

3. poeĀtae

8. regna

4. terrōs

5. aquarum, aquōs

7. 1. virō

6. feminarum, feminōs

2. gladium

7. terra

3. bellum, bellum

8. pecuniae

4. ventus

5. amōco, amōco

4. 1. puella

6. vir

2. terram

7. numerum

3. poetae, poeta

8. regnō

4. aquae

5. mensae, mensa

8.

Sing.

Pl.

6. terra

1. Nom.

corpus

corpora

7. insulae

Gen.

corporis

corporum

8. luÅna

Dat.

corporõÅ

corporibus

Acc.

corpus

corpora

5. 1.

Sing.

Pl.

Abl.

corpore

corporibus

Nom.

saxum

saxa

2. Nom.

meÅns

menteÅs

Gen.

saxõÅ

saxoÅrum

Gen.

mentis

mentium

Dat.

saxoÅ

saxõÅs

Dat.

mentõÅ

mentibus

Acc.

saxum

saxa

Acc.

mentem

mente=mentō

Abl.

saxo

saxō

Abl.

mente

mentibus

2. Nom.

puer

puerō

3. Nom.

dolor

dolorē

Gen.

puerō

puerōrum

Gen.

doloris

dolorum

177

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

178

Answers to Exercises

Dat.

doloÅrõÅ

doloÅribus

4. third

Acc.

doloÅrem doloÅreÅs

5. fourth

Abl.

doloÅre

doloÅribus

6. second

7. second

9. 1. urbeÅs, urbõÅs (i-stem)

8. @rst

2. reÅgibus

9. third

3. voÅcum

10. third

4. animaÅlibus, animaÅlibus

5. ¯uÅmina, ¯uÅmina

15. 1. liberty (direct object)

6. urbium

2. of the horsemen

7. nocteÅs

3. from, with, in, by rocks=to, for rocks

8. amoÅribus

4. of the poet, for the poet, the poets (subject)

5. @elds (direct object)

10. 1. sõÅdus, sõÅdus

6. example (subject or direct object)

2. voluptaÅtõÅ, voluptaÅte

7. of the shore

3. urbs, urbem

8. of the appearance=to, for appearance

4. doloÅris

9. to, for the queens=from, with, in, by

5. montem

queens

6. mentis

10. the appearance of liberty

7. animal, animal

11. the king of the poets

8. naÅvis

12. rocks of the @eld

9. amoÅrõÅ, amoÅre

11.

Sing.

Pl.

16. 1. curruÅs

1. Nom.

specieÅs

specieÅs

2. exemplaÅribus

Gen.

specieÅõÅ

specieÅrum

3. reÅgõÅnaÅrum, reÅgõÅnõÅs

Dat.

specieÅõÅ

specieÅbus

4. equitibus

Acc.

speciem

specieÅs

5. lõÅtora

Abl.

specieÅ

specieÅbus

2. Nom.

manus

manuÅs

17. 1. poeÅtae, poeÅtaÅ

Gen.

manuÅs

manuum

2. agrõÅ

Dat.

manuõÅ

manibus

3. saxum, saxum

Acc.

manum

manuÅs

4. lõÅbertaÅtis

Abl.

manuÅ

manibus

5. reÅgõÅnam

12. 1. reÅs, reÅs

18. 1. puella

puellae

2. dieÅrum

puellae

puellaÅrum

3. fruÅctuum

puellae

puellōÅs

4. fruÅctibus

puellam

puellaÅs

5. genus 2x, genibus 2x

puellaÅ

puellōÅs

2. dolor

doloÅreÅs

13. 1. genuÅ

doloÅris

doloÅrum

2. uÅsuÅs

doloÅrōÅ

doloÅribus

3. reōÅ

doloÅrem

doloÅreÅs

4. dieÅōÅ, dieÅ

doloÅre

doloÅribus

5. reÅs, rem

3. bellum

bella

bellōÅ

belloÅrum

14. 1. @rst

belloÅ

bellõÅs

2. @fth

bellum

bella

3. third

belloÅ

bellõÅs

Answers to Exercises

179

4. spõÅritus

spõÅrituÅs

5. noÅbileÅs, noÅbileÅs, noÅbilõÅs

spõÅrituÅs

spõÅrituum

6. noÅbilis 2x

spõÅrituõÅ

spõÅritibus

7. noÅbilis

spõÅritum

spõÅrituÅs

8. noÅbilis, noÅbilõÅ

spõÅrituÅ

spõÅritibus

9. noÅbilem

5. reÅs

reÅs

10. noÅbileÅs, noÅbilõÅs

reŃ

reŃrum

reŃ

reŃbus

4. 1. puella deŃmeŃs

puellae deŃmenteŃs

rem

reŃs

puellae deŃmentis

puellaŃrum deŃmentium

reŃ

reŃbus

puellae deŃmentŃ

puellŃs deŃmentibus

6. urbs

urbeŃs

puellam deŃmentem puellaŃs deŃmenteŃs,

urbis

urbium

deŃmentŃs

urbŃ

urbibus

puellaŃ deŃmentŃ

puellŃs deŃmentibus

urbem

urbeŃs, urbŃs

2. reŃs facilis

reŃs facileŃs

urbe

urbibus

reŃ facilis

reŃrum faciliŃ

reŃ facilŃ

reŃbus facilibus

Chapter 2

rem facileŃ

reŃ facileŃ, facilŃ

reŃ facilŃ

reŃbus facilibus

1. 1. magnus

5. 1. malae, grandis or malae, grandŃ

2. magnae

or malae, grandeŃ

3. magnŃ, magnŃ

2. malŃ, grandis or malŃ, grandeŃ

4. magnoŃrum

3. mala, grandia 2x

5. magnoŃ

4. malŃ, grandibus 2x

6. magnŃ, magnŃ, magnoŃ

5. malaŃrum, grandium

7. magna, magnae, magnaŃ

6. malŃ, grandeŃ or

8. magnoŃrum

maloŃ, grandeŃ=grandŃ

9. magna

7. malus, grandis

10. magnaŃrum

8. malae, grandis or malae, grandeŃ

or malae, grandeŃ=grandŃ

2. 1. reÅx bonus

reÅgeÅs bonõÅ

9. malum, grande 2x

reÅgis bonõÅ

reÅgum bonoÅrum

10. malaÅrum, grandium

reÅgõÅ bonoÅ

reÅgibus bonõÅs

11. malae, grandis

reÅgem bonum

reÅgeÅs bonoÅs

12. maloÅ, grandõÅ

reÅge bonoÅ

reÅgibus bonõÅs

13. maloÅrum, grandium

voc. sing. reÅx bone

14. maloÅs, grandeÅs=grandõÅs

2. urbs pulchra

urbeÅs pulchrae

15. malum, grande 2x

urbis pulchrae

urbium pulchraÅrum

urbõÅ pulchrae

urbibus pulchrõÅs

6. 1. toÅtõÅus, toÅtõÅ

urbem pulchram

urbeÅs=urbõÅs pulchraÅs

2. toÅtaÅ

urbe pulchraÅ

urbibus pulchrõÅs

3. toĀtus

3. bellum duĀrum

bella duĀra

4. toĀtōĀus

bellōĀ duĀrōĀ

belloĀrum duĀroĀrum

5. toĀtōĀus, toĀtōĀ

belloĀ duĀroĀ

bellōĀs duĀrōĀs

6. toĀtōĀus, toĀtōĀ

bellum duĀrum

bella duĀra

7. toĀtoĀ

belloĀ duĀroĀ

bellōĀs duĀrōĀs

7. 1. poeĀta grandior

poeĀtae grandioĀreĀs

3. 1. noĀbilōĀ

poeĀtae grandioĀris

poeĀtaĀrum grandioĀrum

2. noĀbilibus

poeĀtae grandioĀrōĀ

poeĀtis grandioĀribus

3. noĀbile 2x

poeĀtam grandioĀrem poeĀtaĀs grandioĀreĀs=-ōĀs

4. noĀbilium

poeĀtaĀ grandioĀrōĀ(-e) poeĀtōĀs grandioĀribus

180

Answers to Exercises

8. 1. reĀs facillima

reÂs facillimae

3. the same wind

reôÂ facillimae

reÂrum facillimaÂrum

4. these girls

reôÂ facillimae

reÂbus facillimôÂs

5. those rocks

rem facillimam

reÂs facillimaÂs

6. that man lives

reÂ facillimaÂ

reÂbus facillimôÂs

7. she herself comes

2. reÂgôÂna miserrima

reÂgôÂnae miserrimae

8. that woman herself comes

reÂgôÂnae miserrimae

reÂgôÂnaÂrum

9. I saw the brother of this man

miserrimaÂrum

10. That man will live, this one will die.

reÂginae miserrimae

reÂgôÂnôÂs miserrimôÂs

reÂgôÂnam miserrimam

reÂginaÂs miserrimaÂs

5. 1. cui

reÂginaÂ miserrimaÂ

reÂgôÂnae miserrimôÂs

2. cuius

3. quōs, quoAs

9. 1. sharp breath

4. cuius, quōs

2. most humble voices

5. cuius, quōs

3. a most hard king

6. quārum

4. the greatest luxury

7. quibus 2x

5. the least faith

8. quoAs

6. a better mind

9. quārum

7. the best wind

10. quibus 2x

8. the greater son

9. a more insane joy

6. 1. aliquōs

10. most noble liberty

2. quoAsque

11. of the most beautiful ships

3. quaedam

12. of the worst animal

4. alicuius

5. quaeque

Chapter 3

7. 1. some money

1. 1. ego

2. each queen

2. noAs

3. a certain war

3. voÅs

4. tuÅ

Chapter 4

2. 1. noÅs

1. 1. duÅcoÅ

2. seÅ

duÅcis

3. voÅs

duÅcit

4. seÅ

duÅcimus

duÅcitis

3. 1. haec

duÅcunt

2. illum

2. venioÅ

3. eaÅrum

venõÅs

4. ipsa, ipsae, ipsaÅs

venit

5. eoÅrundem

venõÅmus

6. hõÅs

venõÅtis

7. huius

veniunt

8. illõÅs, illõÅs

3. iacioÅ

9. eaÅsdem

iacis

10. ipsa

iacit

iacimus

4. 1. that queen

iacitis

2. you (pl.) yourselves

iaciunt

Answers to Exercises

181

2. 1. impleor

venieÅbaÅtis

impleÅris=impleÅre

venieÅbant

impleÅtur

impleÅmur

impleÅminõÅ

5. 1. duÅceÅbar

implentur

duÅceÅbaÅris=duÅceÅbaÅre

2. pellor

duÅceÅbaÅtur

pelleris=pellere

duÅceÅbaÅmur

pellitur

duÅceÅbaÅminõÅ

pellimur

duÅceÅbantur

pelliminõÅ

2. habeÅbar

pelluntur

habebantur

3. paror

habebantur

parantur

habebantur

parantur

habebantur

parantur

habebantur

parantur

parantur

6. 1. 1st person plural passive:

we were being pushed

3. 1. 1st person plural active: we @ll

2. 1st person plural active: we were holding

2. 3rd person singular passive:

3. 1st person singular active: I was leading

he, she, it is led

4. 2nd person plural passive:

3. 3rd person plural active: they hurl

you (pl.) were being pushed

4. 3rd person plural passive:

5. 3rd person plural passive:

they are being prepared

they were being @lled

5. 2nd person singular active: you push

6. 3rd person plural active: they were coming

6. 2nd person singular passive:

7. 3rd person singular passive:

you are being pushed

he, she, it was being held

7. 2nd person plural passive:

8. 3rd person singular active:

you (pl.) are being hurled

he, she, it was @lling

8. 2nd person plural active: you (pl.) prepare

9. 3rd person plural active: they lead

7. 1. paraÅboÅ

10. 1st person plural passive: we are @lled

paraÅbis

paraÅbit

4. 1. impleÅbam

paraÅbimus

impleÅbaÅs

paraÅbitis

impleÅbat

paraÅbunt

impleÅbaÅmus

2. duÅcam

impleÅbaÅtis

duÅceÅs

impleÅbant

duÅcet

2. pelleÅbam

duÅceÅmus

pelleÅbaÅs

duÅceÅtis

pelleÅbat

duÅcent

pelleÅbaÅmus

pelleÅbaÅtis

8. 1. impleÅbor

pelleÅbant

impleÅberis=impleÅbere

3. venieÅbam

impleÅbitur

venieÅbaÅs

impleÅbimur

venieÅbat

impleÅbiminõÅ

venieÅbaÅmus

impleÅbuntur

182

Answers to Exercises

2. audiar

12. facerem

audieÅris=audieÅre

facereÅs

audieÅtur

faceret

audieÅmur

facereÅmus

audieÅminõÅ

facereÅtis

audientur

facerent

9. 1. 2nd person singular active:

13. duÅcerer

you will prepare

du Ācere Āris = du Ācere Āre

2. 1st person singular active: I will @ll

du Ācere Ātur

3. 1st person plural passive: we will be led

du Ācere Āmur

4. 3rd person singular passive:

du Ācere Āmin ō Ā

he, she, it will be heard

du Ācerentur

5. 1st person singular active: I will push

6. 3rd person plural passive:

14. 1. 1st person plural present indicative active

they will be prepared

2. 2nd person plural present subjunctive

7. 2nd person plural active:

active

you (pl.) will have

3. 3rd person singular imperfect indicative

8. 1st person plural active: we will push

active

9. 2nd person singular passive:

4. 3rd person singular present subjunctive

you will be @lled

passive

10. 2nd person plural passive:

5. 3rd person plural future indicative active

you (pl.) will be led

6. 2nd person singular imperfect subjunctive

active

10. 1. parem

7. 2nd person singular future indicative active

pareās

8. 2nd person plural present subjunctive

paret

active

pareāmus

9. 2nd person plural present indicative active

pareātis

10. 1st person singular present subjunctive or

parent

future indicative active

2. faciam

11. 2nd person singular future indicative

faciaās

passive

faciat

12. 2nd person singular imperfect subjunctive

faciaāmus

active

faciaātis

13. 2nd person singular future indicative

faciant

passive

14. 2nd person singular present indicative

passive or present active infinitive

11. 1. habear

or present imperative passive,

habeāris=habeāre

singular

habeātur

15. 2nd person singular present subjunctive

habeaĀmur

passive

habeaĀminōĀ

16. present imperative active plural

habeantur

17. present imperative active, singular

2. duĀcar

18. 1st person singular future indicative

duĀcaĀris=duĀcaĀre

passive

duĀcaĀtur

19. 1st person plural future indicative passive

duĀcaĀmur

20. 1st person plural imperfect indicative

duĀcaĀminōĀ

passive

duĀcantur

21. 1st person singular future indicative active

Answers to Exercises

183

22. 1st person plural present subjunctive active

17. 1. iubeoĀ

23. 2nd person plural present indicative active

2. gereĀbaĀmus

24. 2nd person plural present subjunctive

3. capitis

passive

4. pellet

25. 2nd person singular imperfect indicative

5. deŕleŕreŕs

active

6. impleŕbis

26. 2nd person plural future indicative active

7. capis=cape

27. present imperative active, plural

8. dŕcunt

28. future imperative active, singular

9. habeŕbaŕtis

29. 1st person plural present indicative active

10. iacereŕmus

30. 1st person plural imperfect indicative

passive

18. 1. deŕlet

31. 2nd person singular present indicative

2. caperis=capere

passive or present infinitive active or

3. faciaŕmus

present imperative passive, singular

4. gereŕtis

32. 2nd person singular imperfect subjunctive

5. venieŕbaŕtis

passive

6. dicaŕmus=dŕceŕmus

33. present imperative active, singular

7. pellerem

8. impleŕbunt

15. 1. he, she, it says

9. duŕceŕs

2. you will hurl

10. habebimini

3. they push

4. I will make

19. 1. 1st person singular future perfect

5. they were being destroyed

indicative active

6. we say

2. 1st person plural pluperfect subjunctive

7. manage!

active

8. you will be pushed

3. 3rd person singular future perfect

9. you are led=be led!=to lead

indicative or perfect subjunctive active

10. you (pl.) were coming

4. 1st person singular perfect subjunctive

11. he, she, it walks

active

12. he, she it will be led

5. 2nd person singular perfect indicative

13. they will make

active

14. you (pl.) were being led

6. 3rd person plural perfect indicative active

15. you (pl.) are being captured=be captured!

7. 3rd person plural pluperfect indicative

16. hear!

active

17. let him command=or command

8. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative

18. you have

or perfect subjunctive active

19. it will be waged

9. 2nd person plural perfect indicative active

20. we walk

10. 3rd person singular pluperfect subjunctive

active

16. 1. dōcitur

20. 1. you (pl.) had killed

2. ducaamur

2. I will have made

3. geream

3. you came=you have come

4. duam

4. I loved=I have loved

5. pellebar

5. you (pl.) will have hurled

6. iubeamur

6. you (pl.) had hurled

7. deambere=deambere

7. you (pl.) hurled=you (pl.) have hurled

8. capere

8. they pushed=they have pushed

9. iacimur

9. I said=I have said

10. audiam

10. we said=we have said

184

Answers to Exercises

21. 1. 3rd person singular perfect indicative

9. deÅleÅverint

passive

10. deÅleÅvisset

2. 3rd person singular pluperfect indicative

passive

3. 3rd person plural perfect indicative passive

25. 1. 3rd person plural perfect indicative active

4. 1st person singular perfect indicative

they loved=they have loved

passive

2. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative

5. 1st person plural perfect indicative passive

passive

6. 2nd person singular pluperfect subjective

they will have been led

passive

3. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative

7. 3rd person plural future perfect indicative

active1

passive

he will have walked

8. 3rd person plural perfect subjective passive

4. 2nd person singular perfect indicative

9. 3rd person singular pluperfect subjective

active

passive

you commanded=you have commanded

10. 3rd person plural pluperfect indicative

5. 3rd person singular perfect indicative

passive

passive

he was ordered=he has been ordered

22. 1. it was @lled=it has been @lled

6. 3rd person singular pluperfect indicative

2. she had been @lled

passive

3. we were commanded=we have been

it had been destroyed

commanded

7. 1st person plural pluperfect indicative

4. they will have been destroyed

active

5. they had been pushed

we had destroyed

6. it will have been hurled

8. 2nd person plural perfect indicative active

7. they had been captured

you (person plural) @lled=you (person

8. she has been captured

plural) have @lled

9. they will have been loved

9. 2nd person plural pluperfect indicative

10. I had been loved

active

you (person plural) had pushed

10. 2nd person plural future perfect indicative

23. 1. captus, -a, -um eris=captus, -a, -um sōÅs

active

2. captus, -a, -um sim

you (person plural) will have captured

3. deŕleŕtŕ, -ae, -a estis

11. 2nd person singular imp. indicative active

4. iactŕ, -ae, -ŕ eraŕmus

you were walking

5. pulsus, -a, -um esset

12. 1st person singular future indicative

6. impleŕtus, -a, -um est

active2

7. impleŕtus, -a, -um erit=impleŕtus, -a, -um sit

I will push

8. impleŕtus, -a, -um erat

13. 2nd person plural future indicative active

9. impleŕtŕ, -ae, -a esseŕmus

you (person plural) will  ll

10. ductŕ, -ae, -a sunt

14. 3rd person plural future indicative active

they will push

24. 1. duŕxisseŕtis

15. 2nd person singular future indicative

2. ceŕperat

passive

3. ceŕpimus

you will be pushed

4. ceŕperoŕ

5. duŕxerit

6. deŕleŕverit

1 This form could also be the perfect subjunctive, but this 7. deŕleŕveŕrunt should not be translated in isolation.

8. deŕleŕverant

2 This form could also be present subjunctive. See above.

Answers to Exercises

185

16. 2nd person singular future indicative

34. 3rd person singular pluperfect indicative

passive

passive

you will be pushed

they had been hurled

17. 2nd person plural present indicative passive

you (person plural) are led

26. 1. 1st person singular perfect active

18. 2nd person plural imperative indicative

2. 2nd person plural present passive

passive

3. 2nd person plural pluperfect active

you (person plural) were being led

4. 2nd person plural pluperfect passive

19. 3rd person plural future indicative passive

5. 2nd person singular imperative passive

they will be led

6. 3rd person singular perfect passive

20. 1st person plural present indicative passive

7. 3rd person plural imperfect active

we are ®lled

8. 1st person plural present passive

21. 3rd person singular imperative indicative

9. 2nd person plural perfect active

passive

10. 3rd person singular pluperfect active

he, she, it was being ®lled

11. 3rd person singular imperative passive

22. 3rd person plural future indicative active

12. 2nd person singular present passive

they will @ll

13. 3rd person plural perfect passive

23. 3rd person plural future indicative passive

14. 3rd person plural imperative passive

they will be @lled

15. 3rd person singular present active

24. 1st person singular future indicative active

16. 2nd person plural present active

I will destroy

17. 1st person plural imperative passive

25. 2nd person singular imperative indicative

18. 2nd person singular pluperfect active

passive

19. 1st person singular pluperfect passive

you were being captured

20. 1st person singular perfect active

26. present imperative active person singular

capture!

27. 2nd person singular present indicative

27. 1. perfect active in@nitive

passive

to have had

you are captured

2. present passive in@nitive

present imperative person singular, passive

to be waged

be captured!

3. perfect passive infinitive

present infinitive active

to have been driven

to capture

4. present active infinitive

28. 3rd person singular present indicative

to hurl

active

5. present passive infinitive

he, she, it hurls

to be destroyed

29. 3rd person plural future indicative active

6. future active infinitive

they will hurl

to be about to destroy

30. 3rd person singular future indicative

7. perfect active infinitive

passive

to have destroyed

he, she, it will be hurled

31. 3rd person plural perfect indicative passive

28. 1. capturing

they were hurled=they have been hurled

2. the soldier capturing

32. 2nd person plural future perfect indicative

3. the soldier capturing the city

active

4. the soldier about to capture the city

you (person plural) will have hurled

5. captured

33. 3rd person singular imperfect indicative

6. the captured city

passive

7. the city captured by the soldier

he, she, it was being hurled

8. the city captured by the capturing soldier

9. the city captured by the soldier about to say

3 The form is also perfect subjunctive. Do not translate.

something

186

Answers to Exercises

29. 1. the city has to be destroyed

22. to carry

2. the cities had to be destroyed

23. going

3. the cities will have to be destroyed

24. you (person plural) are able

4. the men are about to destroy the city

25. to be able

5. the men were about to destroy the city

6. the men will be about to destroy the city

Chapter 5

30. 1. they had slipped

2. we will speak

1. 1. noÅbiliter

noÅbilis

noÅbilissimeÅ

3. you use

2. acerbeÅ

acerbius

acerbissime

4. you will use

3. misere

miserius

miserrime

5. I am about to die

4. male

peius

pessime

6. you (person plural) were fearing

5. bene

melius

optime

7. you (person plural) will fear

8. you (person plural) will have slipped

2. 1. under the moon

9. you will try

2. after the war

10. it has to be gained

3. by the king

11. they speak

4. around the city

12. he, she, it uses

5. through the fields

6. without love

31. 1. 3rd person singular present subjective

7. out of the water

2. 2nd person plural imperative subjective

8. with avarice

3. 3rd person plural perfect subjective

9. down from the mountains
4. 1st person plural present subjective
10. against the soldiers
5. 2nd person singular present subjective
11. on account of money
6. 1st person singular pluperfect subjective
12. on behalf of the queen
7. 1st person plural present subjective
13. across the river
8. 1st person plural future indicative
14. before the day
9. 1st person plural present indicative
15. by the poet
10. 2nd person plural present indicative active
32. 1. we will be

Chapter 6

2. they do not wish
3. you (person plural) will be able
1. 1. The boy is the son of the sailor.
4. they are able

predicate nominative

5. you (person plural) wish
2. Avarice is the love of money.
6. he, she, it will go

objective genitive

7. you carry
3. The joy of the friends is great.
8. we are made

predicate nominative

9. you are carried

4. I hear the great joy of the friends.

10. you (person plural) prefer

subjective genitive

11. we do not wish

5. the sword of the daughter

12. I was going

possessive genitive

13. you were able

6. the breath of God

14. you (person plural) are

subjective genitive

15. to be unwilling

7. the pain of the blind slaves

16. to be made

subjective genitive

17. you (person plural) are carried

8. It is characteristic of sons to love their

18. you go

fathers.

19. I will wish

predicate genitive

20. they prefer

9. an animal of large horns

21. he, she, it was unwilling

genitive of description

Answers to Exercises

187

10. horns of animals

6. Waves are a source of great danger to

possessive genitive

sailors.

11. I reckon that queen (the value) of nothing.

predicate dative

genitive of indefinite value

7. He put the army behind the mountains.

dat. with compound verb

2. 1. Therefore as in seeds is the cause of trees

and plants, so you were the cause of this

5. 1. Money will destroy friendship.

most distressing war.

direct object

2. As Helen for the Trojans, so that man was

2. I walked all night.

the cause of war for this republic, the cause

acc. of extent of time

of pestilence and destruction.

3. We do not wish to go a difficult road.

3. Both the name of peace is sweet and the

internal accusative

thing itself beneficial; but between peace

4. The women advanced to Rome.

and slavery there is a great difference. Peace

acc. of place to which

is tranquil liberty, slavery the most extreme

5. I say that money destroys friendship.

of all evil things, to be repelled not only by

acc. subject of an infinitive

war but even death.

6. He says that the men are shouting.

4. There was a very great amount of wine, a

acc. subject of an infinitive

great quantity of the best silver: . . . Of these

7. Avarice destroyed the mind of the king.

things within a few days there was nothing.

direct object

5. It is characteristic of a commander to

8. For many years avarice was destroying the

conquer with planning no less than with the

mind of the king.

sword.

acc. of extent of time.

6. The recollection of slavery will make liberty

more pleasurable singular

6. 1. Indeed the republic certainly has most noble

7. He does not think your gifts of such great

young men prepared as defenders.

(value).

2. But who can tolerate this most foul beast or

how? What is there in Antonius beyond lust,

3. 1. They prepare those things which are of use

cruelty, arrogance, audacity?

to the town.

3. Put before your eyes the happiness of the

2. That man was in charge of the Roman

senate and the Roman people.

citadel.

4. Already I had seen that an evil war against

3. What reason did you bring to the Roman

the altars and hearths, against our life and

people?

fortunes was not being prepared, but waged

4. To some planning was lacking, to others
by a pro-igate and desperate man.

spirit, to others opportunity; to no one the

5. But for how many days in that villa did you
will (was lacking).

most foully revel!

5. Let us prefer death to slavery.

6. O the criminal baseness of the man, o the
shamelessness, the worthlessness, the lust

4. 1. I do not have a sword.

not to be borne!

dat. of the possessor

2. The king was giving money to the soldiers.

7. 1. The animal is bigger than the boy.

dat. indirect object

abl. of comparison

3. The ship had to be destroyed by the poets.

2. The animals are led by the boy.

dat. of agent

abl. of personal agent

4. The city of great luxury had to be destroyed

3. The women came to the sea with great

by the sailors.

care.

dat. of agent

abl. of manner

5. That water is harmful to children.

4. The women came from Rome.

dat. with intransitive verb

abl. of place from which

188

Answers to Exercises

5. You drove out the poet because of avarice.

4. Gold is the most beautiful of all good

abl. of cause

things.

6. You drove out the poet with a sword.

5. I say that water is as beautiful as possible.

abl. of means

6. The wretched poet was shouting about the

7. With the poets singing, the gods heard us.

avarice of the Romans.

abl. absolute

7. The poet was shouting wretchedly about the

8. That year there were many wars in the

avarice of the Romans.

land.

abl. of time when

2. 1. All of your plans are clearer to us than light.

9. The king is much more insane than the

2. But who is able to bear this most foul beast?

queen.

3. Indeed the republic certainly has most noble

abl. of degree of difference

young men prepared as defenders.

10. I fear animals with large horns.

4. Who at any time (was) more pleasing to

abl. of description

rather famous men, who more conjoined

11. The queen ran out of the city because of
with rather foul men? What citizen ever of
fear.

better parts, what enemy more horrible to
abl. of cause

this state? Who more dirty in his pleasures,
who more patient in labors? Who more

8. 1. They are indeed of excellent mind, the best
greedy in rapacity, who more unrestrained
advice, outstanding agreement.
in bribery?

2. All these men differ among themselves in
respect to language, customs, laws.

Chapter 8

3. But Antonius is being held, pressed,
pressured now by those troops which we

1. 1. The sailor sees.

already have, soon by those which within a

2. The sailor will see the mountain.

few days the new consuls will prepare.

3. The sailor saw the mountain with his eyes.

4. For who is more chaste than this young

4. The sailor had seen the war in the mountains

man, who more modest, what more
with his eyes.

illustrious example do we have in our youth

5. With many tears the wretched sailor was
of the ancient sanctity?

seeing the extremely bad war in the

5. Already that man had brought the habit of

mountains of the kingdom.

being a slave to a free state, partly because

6. The mountain is seen.

of fear, partly because of suffering. I can

7. The mountain is seen by the sailor.

compare you with that man in respect to lust

8. The war is seen by the sailor in the

of dominating, but in respect to other things
mountains.

in no way must you be compared with him.

6. With these men being the producers and

2. 1. The king terrifies the citizens.

leaders, with the gods helping, with us

2. The king will terrify the citizens.

keeping watch and providing many things

3. The king terrified the citizens.

for the future, with the Roman people being

4. The king will have terrified the citizens.

in agreement, we will indeed be free within

5. The king had terrified the citizens.

a short time. Moreover the recollection of

6. The king was terrifying the citizens.

slavery will make liberty more pleasurable

singular

3. 1. We will proceed with arguments, we will

refute the charges with proofs clearer than

Chapter 7

light; fact will fight with fact, case with

case, reason with reason.

1. 1. Evil men love money.

2. Of these two charges I see the creator, I see

2. Much money is better than love.

the source, I see the certain head and name.

3. Much money is much better than much

3. But these kinds of excellences not only in
love.

our customs but even now in books are

Answers to Exercises

189

scarcely discovered. Even the pages which

4. Should I walk to the sea?

used to contain that ancient severity have

deliberative

fallen into disuse.

5. Should we have walked to the sea?

4. Between the earth and heaven, in the same

deliberative

air, hang, separated by discrete intervals,

6. Let us walk to the sea!

seven stars which, from their movement we

hortatory

call planets. In the middle of these moves

7. If only we had walked to the sea!

the sun, of the largest magnitude and power

optative

and not only the ruler of seasons and lands,

8. Should the soldiers not have walked to the

but also of the stars themselves and of

sea?

heaven. It is @tting for those judging its

deliberative

works to believe that this (the sun) is the spirit and mind of the entire world, this is the principal rule and spirit of nature. This

8. 1. We have been born for honor and freedom; one provides light and removes darkness, either let us have these things or let us die this conceals, this illuminates the remaining with dignity.

stars, this regulates from the use of nature

2. For who would not fear a god seeing and the successions of the seasons and the year pondering and noticing all things and which is always being reborn; this scatters thinking that all things related to him, the gloom of heaven and even pacifies the attentive and full of concern.

clouds of the human mind; this one also

3. O the stupidity! Should I say stupidity or lends his light to the other stars, extra bright, remarkable shamelessness?

outstanding, looking upon all things, also

4. Let some sport be given to the age, let youth hearing all things: . . .

be more free; let not all things be denied to

5. 1. Do not shout!

pleasures; let that true and upright reason

2. Do not write a book!

not always overcome; let desire and pleasure

3. Do not push the son!

sometimes conquer reason.

4. Do not be pushed!

5. If only I could discover true things as easily

5. Do not destroy the city, oh soldiers!

as refute false things!

6. Do not destroy the city, oh soldiers!

6. If only you had never entered into an

7. Destroy the city, oh soldiers!

alliance with Caesar or had never pulled it

8. Destroy the city, oh soldier!

apart!

7. For why should I have placed myself as an

6. 1. Hear, hear, senators, and learn the wounds

obstacle to your audacity?

of the republic.

2. Save therefore, judges, a citizen of good

skills, of good parts, of good men.

9. 1. the poet singing

3. Do not think that I today, when I respond to

2. liberty destroyed

that man as just as he provoked me, have

3. liberty destroyed by avarice

forgotten myself.

4. liberty destroyed by the avarice of the

4. For which reason depart and remove this

soldiers

fear for me: if it is true, so that I may not be

5. the poet about to shout

oppressed, but if false so that I may really

6. the poet on the mountain about to shout

cease to fear.

7. the poet on the mountain about to shout
about liberty

7. 1. If only our sailors had conquered!

8. the poet on the mountain about to shout
optative

about liberty destroyed by the avarice of

2. If only the sailors would conquer!

the soldiers

optative

9. The poet on the mountain who is about to

3. The sailors could conquer.

shout about liberty which was destroyed by
potential

the avarice of the soldiers is dying.

190

Answers to Exercises

10. The poet on the mountain who was about

8. They were waging war until the king was
to shout about liberty which had been
killed.

destroyed by the avarice of the soldiers

9. They were waging war until the king
died.

should return.

11. The boy walking to the sea fears the

10. Since the king had been killed, the queen
captured slaves.

was shouting.

12. The boy walking to the sea fears the slaves

11. Although the king had been killed,
who were captured by the sailors.

nevertheless the queen was happy.

13. The boy walking to the sea sees the slaves

12. When the moon departed, the light of day
killing the animals.

came.

14. The boy walking to the sea saw the animals
which had been killed by the slaves.

2. 1. Then @nally you will be killed, when no one
so base, so desperate, so similar to you will

10. 1. The queen whom the king fears is loved by
be able to be found.

the poet.

2. Nor for this reason are our speeches less
acc. direct obj.

effective because they arrive with pleasure

2. The king by whom the queen is feared hates
to the ears of the judges.

the poet.

3. For indeed what good man would not have
abl. personal agent

been a creator of your death since the health

3. The king whom the queen hates fears
and life of every excellent man rested upon
animals with large horns.

it, the liberty and dignity of the Roman

acc. direct obj.

people (rested upon it).

4. The animals which had been led to city by

4. But before I approach those things which the king who hates poets were feared have been disputed by you, I will say what I much.

think about you yourself.

nom. subject

5. Since you speak about ancient things, make

5. The animals who had large horns were use of the ancient liberty from which we killed by the soldiers of the king.

have degenerated even more than (we have dat. of the possessor

degenerated) from eloquence.

6. The bodies of the animals whose horns had

6. Pompeius himself, incited by the enemies of been sold were being placed in the @re.

Caesar and because he wished no one to be possessive gen.

made equal with himself in respect to

prestige, had completely turned himself

Chapter 9

away from his friendship.

7. But nevertheless men, although they are in

1. 1. Because the slaves were extremely violently disturbed circumstances, if at least wretched, the king was giving gold to the they are men, sometimes are relaxed in their people.

minds.

2. The king was giving gold to the people

(supposedly) because the slaves were

3. 1. The people fear that the avarice of the king
extremely wretched.

will destroy the kingdom.

3. Although the slaves are most wretched, the

2. The poet was afraid that avarice had

king will not give gold to the people.

destroyed the kingdom.

4. Since the king had given gold to the

3. The king deters the poets from writing

people, the slaves were not shouting.

books.

5. When the king gave gold to the people,

4. The king will not deter the soldiers from

they shouted.

killing the poets.

6. Because the queen had been captured, the

5. The Romans did not doubt that empire was

king was preparing war.

the greatest of goods.

7. The king was preparing war before the

6. The poet was begging the king that the

queen could be killed.

books not be destroyed.

Answers to Exercises

191

7. The king will not destroy the books

2. If the insane king had not destroyed the

provided that the soldiers kill the poets.

kingdom, the poets would not have \bar{e} d to

8. The king wishes to kill the poets in order
Rome. (Past contrary-to-fact)

that the people may be free from books.

3. If the son should not preserve his faith, the

9. The poets were being killed by the king in
father would be most wretched. (Future
such a way that the people feared much.

less vivid)

10. So great was the avarice of the king that

4. If the son were not preserving his faith, the
the people now is a people of slaves.

father would be most wretched. (Present
contrary-to-fact)

4. 1. Was he so insane that he entrusted all his

5. If the son had not preserved his faith at that
fortunes to the slaves of another person?

time, the father would now be most

2. Let desire and pleasure sometimes conquer
wretched. (Mixed contrary-to-fact)

reason, provided that the following rule and

6. If many poets walk in the city, they give
control be maintained.

peace to both the queen and the people.

3. But now, in order that I may free myself
(Simple)

from all ill will, I will put in the middle (i.e.,

7. If the king should kill the poets, the people
explain) the thoughts of the philosophers

would fear. (Future less vivid)

concerning the nature of the gods.

8. If the insane king kills the poets, the
4. But since, senators, something must be said
people will fear much. (Future more vivid
by me on behalf of myself and many things
emphatic)

(must be said) against Antonius, I ask one

9. If the great poet had been killed by the
thing of you, that you listen to me in a
insane king, the queen would have
friendly manner when speaking about
destroyed the peace. (Past contrary-to-fact)
myself, and another thing I myself shall

10. If the great poet is killed by the king, the
bring about, that, when I speak against that
queen will destroy the peace. (Future more
man, you listen attentively.

vivid)

5. You with that throat, with those ^{ank}s, with
that gladiator's strength of your entire body,
had drunk so much (of) wine at the wedding
of Hippia that it was necessary for you on

6. 1. We would also have lost our memory itself
the following day to vomit in view of the
with our voice if it were so much in our
Roman people.

power to forget as (it is in our power) to

6. Why were you either so friendly that you
keep silent.

lent gold or so hostile that you feared

2. Many jokes are customarily in letters which,

poison?

if they should be exposed, would seem

7. Or were they afraid that so many men would
foolish.

be unable to overcome one man, strong men

3. If your parents feared you and you were not
(would be unable to overcome) a weak man,
able to please them in any way (i.e., by any
swift men (would be unable to overcome) a
means) you would withdraw from their eyes
terrified man?

(sight) to some other place.

8. Nor must it be doubted that there were poets

4. But if some state were found in which no
before Homer.

one sinned, a lawyer would be completely

9. For which reason depart and remove this
unnecessary among innocent men just as
fear for me; if it is true, in order that I may
a doctor (would be) among healthy
not be oppressed, but if false, in order that
men.

Finally I may cease to fear.

5. But what would you say in opposition really
if I should deny that I ever sent that letter to
you?

5. 1. If the insane king destroys the kingdom,

6. The day would now run out if I should try to
the poets will flee to Rome. (Future more
express the things which can be said against

vivid)

this thought.

192

Answers to Exercises

7. 1. Poets came to the city in order that they

5. If he would give money to the poets

might write books.

captured by the soldiers, the king would be

2. So blind were the poets that they did not see

loved by the queen.

the danger.

3. There are people of the sort who love

10. 1. While the slaves were fleeing, the soldiers

money more than liberty.

destroyed the city.

4. The king because he loved money more

2. When—if the slaves flee, the soldiers will

than liberty was preparing war.

destroy the city.

5. The soldiers were seeking something of the

3. If the slaves were fleeing, the soldiers

sort which they would love more than

would be destroying the city.

money.

4. When the city had been destroyed by the

soldiers, the commander shouted that he

8. 1. What is there of the sort which you would

was king.

not dare?

5. If the city had been destroyed by the

2. Then naturally you will be killed, when no one soldiers, the commander would have so foul, so desperate, so similar to you will shouted that he was king.

be able to be found (no one) of the sort who

6. If the city is destroyed by the soldiers, the would not say that it was done rightly. As commander will shout that he is king.

long as there will be anyone of the sort who

7. While the commander was shouting that he would dare to defend you, you will live.

was king, the slaves were fleeing from the

3. For what is there indeed, Catiline, of the sort city.

which now in this city would be able to

8. If the commander is king, the slaves will please you, in which there is no one, outside fear much.

that conspiracy of desperate men, of the sort

9. If the commander had been king, the who would not fear you, no one who would slaves would have feared much.

not hate you?

10. Although the commander was shouting

4. Decidius is sent with a few men in order that he was king of the city, nevertheless that he may look over the nature of the the soldiers departed.

place.

5. Hear now, please, not those things of the

11. 1. And so when all of their fields had been
sort which he did basely and intemperately
destroyed, their villages and buildings had
against himself and his own private honor,
been burned, Caesar led the army back and
but which he did impiously and monstrously
settled it in winter camp.

against ourselves and our fortunes, that is,

2. Although a small part of the summer
against the whole republic.

remained, nevertheless Caesar hurried to set

6. For why should I have placed myself as an
forth into Britain.

obstacle to your audacity (of the sort which)

3. And just as the old time saw what was the
neither the authority of this body nor the
most extreme in liberty, so we (see) what in
opinion of the Roman people nor any laws
slavery, with even the exchange of speaking
were able to restrain?

and listening having been removed through
trials.

9. 1. The king will give money to the poet
when=if=because he sings.

12. 1. We think that the queen is wretched.

2. Although he was singing, nevertheless the

2. We think that the queen was wretched.

king did not give money to the poet.

3. We think that the queen will not speak to

3. The king would give money to the poet if he

us.

were singing.

4. He thinks that the mothers of the dead

4. The king would not have given money to
soldiers are walking toward the sea.

the poets if they had been captured by the

5. He thought that the mothers of the dead
soldiers.

soldiers had walked to the sea.

Answers to Exercises

193

6. There is a rumor that the mothers of the

5. You knew to whom the king was going to
dead soldiers will walk to the sea.

give gold.

7. There was a rumor that the mothers of the

6. He did not wish to tell me how the soldiers
dead soldiers would walk to the sea.

had destroyed the city.

8. He says that the animals are being looked

7. No one is able to tell me why the city is
at by the boys.

being destroyed by the soldiers.

9. He says that the animals were looked at by

8. Tell me by whom the king was killed.

the boys.

9. He asked why we are not loved.

10. He said that the animals were being looked

10. Who asked why we had not been loved?

at by the boys.

11. He said that the animals had been looked at by the boys.

15. 1. I (saw) what that man (was thinking and

12. He said that the boys would look at the watching for) and that man on the other animals.

hand saw what I was thinking and watching

13. He said that the animals would look at the for.

boys.

2. That man (saw) what I (was thinking and

14. No one believes that the king will kill the watching for) and I on the other hand saw poets.

what that man was thinking and watching

15. Who would believe that the king killed the for.

poets?

3. For what was the reason why Caelius wanted to give poison to that woman? But

13. 1. Is it believable then that so great a crime was nevertheless it has not been said from where committed for no reason?

that poison came, how it was prepared.

2. Now you will understand that I am keeping

4. And so today I will accomplish that he watch for the safety of the republic much understand how great a favor he received more sharply than you are for its from me at that time.

destruction.

5. And just as the old time saw what was the
3. I was grieved, I was grieved, senators, that
most extreme in liberty, so we (see) what in
the republic which had formerly been saved
slavery, with even the exchange of speaking
by your counsels and mine would perish
and listening having been removed through
within a short time.

trials.

4. For there are and have been philosophers (of
the sort) who believed that the gods have no

16. If, judges, there should perhaps now be present concern for human matters. And if the
someone ignorant of the laws, of trials, of our
opinion of these men is true, what devotion
practice, he would undoubtedly wonder what is
can there be, what sanctity, what

the great terribleness of this case because
religion? . . . However, there are other
during holidays and public entertainments,
philosophers, and these indeed are great and
when all law court business matters have been
noble, (of the sort) who believe that the
suspended, this one trial is being conducted,
entire world is managed and ruled by the
nor would he doubt that the defendant is being
mind and reason of the gods.

accused of so great a crime that, if this thing

5. The clever man does not understand that he
were neglected, the state could not stand.

against whom he speaks is being praised by

1. Present subjunctive in the protasis of a
him, that those among whom he speaks are
future-less-vivid conditional sentence.

being criticized.

2. Present subjunctive in the apodosis of a
future-less-vivid conditional sentence.

14. 1. We wonder why you are shouting.

3. Present subjunctive in indirect question in
2. We were wondering why you had shouted.
primary sequence showing time

3. I do not know why they shouted.
simultaneous to the main verb.

4. Do you know to whom the king will give

4. Ablative of time when.
gold?

5. Ablative absolute.

194

Answers to Exercises

6. Present subjunctive in a clause of doubting

2. Perfect subjunctive in a relative clause in
in primary sequence showing time
indirect statement in primary sequence
simultaneous to the main verb.

showing time prior to the main verb.

7. Present subjunctive in a result clause in

3. Ablative of description.
primary sequence.

4. Present subjunctive in a relative clause in
indirect statement in primary sequence

17. 1. The king kills poets because they shout

showing time prior to the main verb

about liberty.

2. The queen says that the king kills poets

19. 1. He says that if war is waged in the province, because they shout about liberty.

the farmers $\bar{e}e$. (Simple)

3. The queen said that the king was killing the

2. He says that if war is waged in the province,

poets because they were shouting about

the farmers will $\bar{e}e$. (Future)

liberty.

3. He was saying that if war were waged in the

4. The queen says that the king killed the poets

province, the farmers would $\bar{e}e$. (Future)

because they shouted about liberty.

4. He says that if war were being waged in the

5. The queen says the king will kill the poets

province, the farmers would be $\bar{e}e$ ing.

because they shouted about liberty.

(Present contrary-to-fact)

6. The queen was saying that the king had

5. He says that if war had been waged in the

killed the poets because they were shouting

province, the farmers would have $\bar{e}d$. (Past

about liberty.

contrary-to-fact)

7. The queen was saying that the king would

6. He was saying that if war had been waged in

kill the poets because they had shouted

the province, the farmers would have $\bar{e}d$.

about liberty.

(Past contrary-to-fact)

8. The queen was saying that the king who
20. And indeed, if you wish to pay attention
feared the people had killed the poets
diligently, (and) to judge truly concerning this
because they had shouted about liberty.

entire case, you will so decide, judges, that

9. The queen was saying that the king who
neither would anyone for whom whether he
feared the people would kill the poets
wished (to do so or not) were permitted, have
because they were shouting about liberty.

descended to this accusation, nor, when he had
descended, would he have any hope (anything

18. When the same man hears that there is a law
of hope), if he were not relying upon the
which, in the case of rebellious and criminal
intolerable lust and excessively bitter hatred of
citizens who have occupied the senate armed,
someone else.

who have inflicted violence upon magistrates,

The indirect question *utrum vellet* is the
who have attacked the republic, orders a trial to
subject of *liceret*.

be held daily, he would not disapprove of the

There is a subordinated conditional sentence
law, he would ask the crime which is being
that probably would have run as follows:

handled in the trial; when he hears that no
crime, no audacity, no violence is being called

Ad hanc accusatioñem noñ descendisset is cui
into trial but that a young man of outstanding
liceñbat (dicere) utrum vellet (descendere an
talent, diligence, favor is being accused by the
noñ), nec, cum descendisset, quicquam spei
son of that man whom he himself is calling and
habuisset=habeñret, nisi alicuius libõñdine et
has called, moreover that he is being attacked
odioñ niteñreñtur.Đ

by the resources of a prostitute, he would not

21. 1. The queen thinks that the poets will be
ñnd fault with the loyalty of that man, he would
killed by the king.

think that the lust of a woman must be

2. The queen thought that the poets would be
suppressed, he would judge that you are very
killed by the king.

hard working, for whom it is not permitted to

3. The queen believes that on that day the
be at leisure not even during the leisure that is
citizens will fear the king.

common to all.

4. The queen believed that on that day the

1. Subject accusative of an indirect statement.
citizens would fear the king.

Answers to Exercises

195

5. There was a rumor that the king would not
which you devise against us to be brought
be able to kill the poets whom the queen had

against you.

hidden.

6. What does it matter whether I wanted it to be done or that I am happy that it was done?

22. 1. That the king prepares war wearies the citizens.

2. It does not concern the poet whether the

24. 1. Is it sweet to live?

king destroys the books.

2. I will go to the province in order to see the

3. The poet said that all books would be

war.

destroyed.

3. I will go to the province in order to see the

4. The avarice of the king disgusts all.

war.

5. It concerns all that liberty be preserved.

4. I will go to the province for the sake of

6. It wearies the queen to see the king.

seeing the war.

7. It most greatly interests you to go away.

5. To kill the poets was a terrible thing to do.

8. It will be necessary for all the citizens to

6. The poet wished to remain in the city.

read this book.

7. The soldiers are afraid to destroy the city.

9. It will be necessary that this book be read

8. For the sake of destroying the liberty of all,

by all the citizens.

the king wished to kill the poets.

10. It was not permitted for us that we live in peace.

25. 1. O an affair not only foul to see but even to hear!

23. 1. In such great happiness of the whole state

2. Is it not therefore better to die a thousand times than to be unable to live in one's own depressed?

state without the protection of armed men?

2. Nevertheless it will not disgust (one) even

3. The day would now run out if I should try to with a rough and unfinished voice to have express the things which can be said against composed a record of prior slavery and a this thought.

testimony of the present goods.

4. On behalf of my perpetual desire of

3. Neither did the soldiers embarrass me nor maintaining and increasing your dignity, I did you (embarrass) the leader.

ask and beg you, senators, that first,

4. When finally was it that what is permitted although it will be bitter to hear or was not permitted?

incredible to have been said by Cicero, you

5. For a long time already it was fitting for you hear what I will say without offense, and to be led to death by order of the consul, that you not reject it before I have explained Catiline; (it was fitting) for the destruction

how it is.

This page intentionally left blank.

INDEX

ablative case, 3±4, 60, 91±97

participle

absolute, 94, 145±148

future, 62, 64, 118

of cause (from), 92

perfect, 61, 64±66

of comparison (from), 93

present, 61, 62, 64±66

degree of difference (by), 93

perfect indicative, 52

of description (with), 93

pluperfect indicative, 52

of manner (with), 93

present indicative, 39

of means/instrument (by), 92

verbs, 35, 39

of personal agent (by), 92

adjectives, 17±26

of place from which (from), 91±92

as adverbs, 73±74, 88, 100

of place where (in), 92

comparative degree of, 24±26, 100±101

with prepositions, 76±77, 94

declension of, 17±23

of respect, 94

®rst-second, 17±19, 28, 73, 74

of separation (from), 93

third, 19±23, 61, 73
of time when/within which (in), 92
definition of, 17
absolute ablative, 94, 145±148
demonstrative, 29±31, 99
accentuation, xiv±xv
first-second-declension, 17±19, 23, 28, 73, 74
accusative case, 3, 88±91
gender of, 17±21, 25
adverbial, 88
and genitive singular, 23
cognate, 88
indefinite, 32±33
direct object, 88
interrogative, 99
of duration of time, 88
irregular, 23
of exclamation, 89
one-termination, 21
of extent of space, 88
participles as, 117, 144
internal, 88
positive, 24
of place to which, 88±89
possessive, 28±29
with prepositions, 74±77, 89
predicate, 99
subjects of infinitives, 88
pronouns as, 29
supine in, 60

substantive, 100
active periphrastic, 63
superlative degree of, 25±26, 100±101
active voice, 35, 39
syntax of, 99±103
and deponent verbs, 63±64
third-declension, 19±23, 61, 73
future, 60, 62, 64, 118
one-termination, 21
future imperative, 49
three-termination, 19±20
future indicative, 43±44
two-termination, 20±21
future perfect indicative, 53
three-termination, 19±20
imperfect indicative, 41±42
two-termination, 20±21
imperfect subjunctive, 47
verbal
in@nitive
gerundive as, 172
future active, 60
participles as, 61, 117
perfect, 59±60
adverbial accusative, 88
present, 59, 64
adverbs, 73±74, 77
present active, 59
accusative of adjectives as, 88

198

INDEX

adverbs (continued)

of result, 140

adjectives as, 73±74, 88, 100

simple sentences, 119±120

comparative of, 74

with subjunctive, 140±144

definition of, 73

result, 129

formation of, 73±74

subordinate, 121

participles as, 144

ablative word combinations as, 94

positive, 74

in conditional sentences, 135

superlative of, 74

in indirect statement, 158±159

agent, dative of, 86

sequence of tenses, 122

agreement

temporal, 121, 123±124

of adjectives with nouns, 17, 99, 117

cognate accusative, 88

of relative pronoun and antecedent, 119, 120

commands

alphabet, xiii±xiv

imperative mood for, 36

consonants, xiii

indirect, 129

diphthongs, xiv

negative simple sentences,

vowels, xiv

110±112

antecedents, 31, 119, 120

subjunctive mood, 114

apodosis, 135, 162, 163

comparative degree

aspect (of verb tenses), 36±37

adjectives, 24±25, 100±101

adverbs, 74

comparison

cases

ablative of (from), 93

definition of, 2

with quam, 100±101

general explanation of, 1±2

complementary infinitives, 172

of nouns, 1±2

completed action, 36±37

(See also specific cases)

complex sentences

causal clauses, 121, 124±125

ablative absolute, 145±148

cause

causal clauses, 124±125

ablative of (from), 92

clauses in, 121

relative clauses of, 141

clauses of doubting, 130
characteristic
clauses of prevention, 130
genitive of, 81
clauses of proviso, 131
relative clauses of, 140
concessive clauses, 125±128
clauses
conditional sentences, 135±140
causal, 121, 124±125
contrary-to-fact conditions, 136±137
in complex sentences, 121
future conditions, 135±136
concessive, 125±128
in indirect statement, 162±165
of doubting, 130
simple conditions, 135
fear, 130
definition of, 121
fore ut, 165±167
fear clauses, 130
independent
fore ut clause, 165±167
main verbs of, 113
gerund/gerundive, 172±173
simple sentences as, 105
impersonal verbs, 167±172
of prevention, 130
of emotional distress, 167±168
of proviso, 131

and expressions of permission/necessity,

purpose, 128±129

168

relative, 31

of interest, 168±169

of cause, 141

indirect commands, 129

of characteristic, 140

indirect question, 153±158

in indirect statement, 159±162

indirect statement, 148±153

of purpose, 140±141

conditional sentences in, 162±165

INDEX

199

relative clauses in, 159±162

reference, 85

subordinate clauses in, 158±159

declension, 4±5

in@nitives, 171±172

of adjectives, 17±23, 27±32

participles, 144±145

demonstrative, 29±31

purpose clauses, 128±129

@rst-second, 17±19, 25±26, 28

relative clauses

inde@nite, 32±33

of cause, 141

interrogative, 31±32

of characteristic, 140

third, 19±23
in indirect statement, 159±162
definition of, 4
of purpose, 140±141
of demonstrative pronouns/adjectives,
of result, 141
29±31
with subjunctive, 140±144
first, 4±6
result clauses, 129
fourth, 12
sequence of tenses, 122±123
of indefinite pronouns/adjectives, 32±33
subordinate clauses in indirect statement,
of interrogative pronouns/adjectives,
158±159
31±32
supine, 173±174
of nouns
syntax of, 121±175
first, 13±14
temporal clauses, 123±124
first, 4±6
compound verbs, dative with, 85±86
fourth, 12
concern, impersonal verbs of, 168±169
second, 7±9
concessive clauses, 125±128, 144
third, 9±12
conditional sentences, 135±140, 162±165

of participles, 61

conditions

of pronouns, 27±32

contrary-to-fact, 136±137, 145, 146,

demonstrative, 29±31

163±164

indefinite, 32±33

future, 135±136, 145

second, 7±9

simple, 135

third, 9±12

conjunction, subordinating, 121±124

defective verb, 70

conjugations, 37±38

deliberative subjunctive, 113

of possessive adjectives, 28

demonstrative adjectives, 99

of verbs, 37±39

demonstratives

definition of, 35

adjectives, 29±31

first, 38, 43, 44

pronouns, 27

fourth, 38, 44

deponent verbs, 63±66

perfect system, 52±58

deponents

present system, 38±51

imperfect subjunctive, 65±66

second, 38, 43, 44

participles, 64±66
third, 38±40, 43, 44
future active, 64±66
contrary-to-fact conditions, 136±137, 145, 146,
perfect active, 64±66
163±164
present active, 64±66
description
ablative of (with), 93
dative case
genitive of, 81
of agent, 86
difference, ablative of degree of (by), 93
with compound verbs, 85±86
diphthongs, xiv
indirect object, 84±85
direct address, 4
with intransitive verbs, 86
direct object, 88
nouns, 3, 84±87
case of, 3
of the possessor, 85
gerundive for expressing, 172
predicate, 85
doubting, clauses of, 130
200
INDEX
emotional distress, impersonal verbs of, 167±168
neuter, 17±21
exclamation, accusative of, 89

third-declension, 19±21
masculine, 17±21
of mixed-gender noun groups, 99
fear clauses, 130
neuter, 17±21
®fth declension, 13±14
of nouns, 1
®rst-conjugation verbs, 38, 43, 44
®rst-declension, 5
®rst declension
second-declension, 8
of adjectives, 17±19, 25±26, 28
third-declension, 9, 11
of nouns, 4±6
of re⁻exive pronouns, 29
®rst-declension adjectives, 17±19, 25±26, 28
genitive case
®rst-declension nouns, 4±6
adjectives, 23
®rst person, 35
with certain verbs, 82
®rst-second-declension adjectives, 17±19, 73, 74
of characteristic, 81
fore ut clause, 165±167
of description, 81
fourth-conjugation verbs, 38, 44
with impersonal verbs, 82
fourth declension, 12
of inde®nite value, 81
fourth-declension nouns, 60

nouns, 2, 80±84
future active
objective, 80±81
in@nitives, 60
partitive, 80
participles, 62, 118
possessive, 80
future conditions, 135±136
predicate, 81
future imperative
subjective, 81
active, 49
gerundive, 172±173
passive, 49
formation of, 172±173
future indicative, 68, 70
uses of, 172±173
active, 43±44
gerunds, 172±173
irregular, 67±68
formation of, 60±61
passive, 44
uses of, 172±173
future in@nitive, 67±68
future participles, 62±63
active, 62, 63
passive, 62, 63
historical in@nitives, 172
future passive
hortatory subjunctive, 114

in@nitives, 60

participles, 62, 63

future perfect, 70

imperative mood, 36

future perfect indicative

formation of, 48, 110

active, 53

negative commands, 110±112

passive, 55

present

future perfect tense, 37, 70

active, 48

future-less-vivid conditions, 136

passive, 48±49

future-more-vivid conditions, 135±136, 145

simple sentences, 110±112

future tense, 37

tenses of, 37

imperatives, 69±70

imperfect indicative, 68, 70

gender, 17

active, 41±42

of adjectives, 17±21, 25

irregular, 67±68

feminine, 17±21

passive, 42

@rst-second-declension, 17±18

imperfect subjunctive, 65±66

masculine, 17±21

active, 47

INDEX

201

passive, 47

in indirect statement, 149±150

secondary sequence in, 123

as nouns, 171

wishes, 113

perfect active, 59

imperfect tense, 37

perfect passive, 59±60

impersonal verbs, 66, 167±172

present active, 59, 64

in complex sentences, 167±172

present passive, 59, 64±66

of emotional distress, 167±168

subjects of, accusative case for, 88

and expressions of permission/necessity, 168

syntax of, 171±172

of interest, 168±170

tenses of, 149±150

syntax of, 167±169

in⁻fection

uses of, 167±172

de®nition of, 2

inde®nite pronouns/adjectives, 32±33

of verbs, 35

inde®nite value, genitive of, 81

intensi®er, ipse as, 30

independent clauses

interest, impersonal verbs of, 168±170

in complex sentences, 121

internal accusative, 88

main verbs of (subjunctive mood), 113

interrogatives

simple sentences as, 105

adjectives, 31±32, 99

indicative mood, 36

pronouns, 31±32

future, 68

intransitive verbs, dative with, 86

imperfect, 68, 70

ipse, 30

active, 41±42

irregular adjectives, 23

passive, 42

irregular nouns, 14±16

perfect

irregular verbs, 67±68

active, 52

i-stem declension

passive, 55, 64±66

nouns, 9±12

pluperfect

verbs, 44

active, 52

passive, 55

present, 68±70

jussive subjunctive, 114

active, 39

passive, 39±40, 63, 65±66

simple sentences, 106±110
of subordinating conjunctions, 121
law of the penult, xiv n.2
tenses of, 37
locative case (location)
indirect commands, 129
first declension, 5 n.2
indirect object, 3, 84±85
nouns, 4, 97
indirect questions, 153±158
second declension, 8 n.3
indirect statement, 88
in complex sentences, 148±153
conditional sentences in, 162±165
macron, xiv
relative clauses in, 159±162
manner, ablative of (with), 93
subordinate clauses in, 158±159
means/instrument, ablative of (by), 92
syntax of, 148±153
mixed contrary-to-fact conditions, 137
infinitives, 59±60
mixed future conditions, 137
complementary, 172
modal auxiliaries, 36
in complex sentences, 171±172
moods (of verbs), 36
definition of, 59
motion, 88
formation of, 59±60

future active, 60
future passive, 60
necessity, verbs expressing, 168
historical, 172
negative commands, 110±112
202

INDEX

nominative case, 2, 79±80
of description, 81, 93
predicate nominative, 79±80
direct object, 88
subject, 79
of exclamation, 89
non-i-stem declension
of extent of time/space, 88
nouns, 9
fourth-declension, 60
verbs, 43
gender of, 1
nouns, 1±16
genitive case, 2, 80±84
ablative case, 3±4, 91±97
with certain verbs, 82
absolute, 94, 145
of characteristic, 81
of cause (from), 92
of description, 81
of comparison (from), 93
of indefinite value, 81
of description (with), 93

objective, 80±81
of manner (with), 93
partitive, 80
of means/instrument (by), 92
possessive, 80
of personal agent (by), 92
predicate, 81
of place from which (from), 91±92
subjective, 81
of place where (in), 92
of indefinite value, 81
with prepositions, 94
indirect object, 84±85
of respect, 94
with intransitive verbs, 86
of separation (from), 93
irregular, 14±16
of time when/within which (in), 92
i-stem, 9±12
accusative case, 3, 88±91
locative case, 4, 97
adverbial, 88
of manner (with), 93
direct object, 88
of means/instrument (by), 92
of exclamation, 89
nominative case, 2, 79±80
of extent of time/space, 88
predicate nominative, 79±80
of place to which, 88±89

subject, 79

with prepositions, 89

non-i-stem, 9

subjects of infinitives, 88

number of, 1

adverbial, 88

objective, 80±81

of agent, 86

partitive, 80

cases of, 1±2

of personal agent (by), 92

of cause (from), 92

of place from which (from), 91±92

with certain verbs, 82

of place to which, 88±89

of characteristic, 81

of place where (in), 92

of comparison (from), 93

possessive, 2, 80

with compound verbs, 85±86

of the possessor, 85

dative case, 3, 84±87

predicate, 81, 85

of agent, 86

predicate nominative, 79±80

with compound verbs, 85±86

with prepositions, 89, 94

indirect object, 84±85

of respect, 94

with intransitive verbs, 86

of separation (from), 93
of the possessor, 85
stem for all, 7
predicate, 85
subject, 79
declension of, 4±14
subjective, 81
④fth, 13±14
subjects of in④nitives, 88
④rst, 4±6
syntax of, 79±97
fourth, 12
of time when/within which (in), 92
second, 7±9
verbal, 59±61
third, 9±12
gerund as, 171
INDEX
203
in④nitives as, 171
imperfect subjunctive, 47
supine, 173±174
in④nitives
vocative case, 4
future passive, 60
number, 39
perfect passive, 59±60
of nouns, 1
present passive, 59, 64±66
of subject, 35

participles

future, 62, 63

perfect, 62

objective genitive, 80±81

present, 61

obligation, verbs expressing, 168

perfect, 54±58

one-termination adjectives, 21, 61

perfect indicative, 55, 64±66

optative subjunctive, 113

perfect infinitives, 59±60

ownership, 80

perfect subjunctive, 55

periphrastic, 63, 86

pluperfect indicative, 55

pluperfect subjunctive, 56

participles, 54, 61±63

present imperative, 48±49

in ablative absolutes, 145

present imperfect indicative, 42

as adjectives, 144

present imperfect subjunctive, 47

as adverbs, 144

present indicative, 39±40, 63, 65±66

in complex sentences, 144±145

present infinitive, 59, 64±66

declension of, 61

present participles, 61

definition of, 61

present subjunctive, 46

deponents, 64±66

subjunctive

future active, 64±66

perfect, 55

perfect active, 64±66

pluperfect, 56

present active, 64±66

present, 46

formation of, 61±63

verbs, 35, 39

future

past contrary-to-fact conditions, 136±137, 145,

active, 62, 63, 118

146

passive, 62, 63

past tense, 37

perfect

penultimate syllable, xiv±xv

active, 61

perfect active in@nitives, 59

passive, 62

perfect active participle, 61

present, 68, 69, 117±118

perfect indicative, 122 n.1

active, 61, 62

active, 52

passive, 61

passive, 55, 64±66

relative time, 117±118

perfect participles, active, 61

simple sentences, 117±119

perfect passive infinitives, 59±60

uses of, 144±145

perfect subjunctive

partitive genitive, 80

active, 53

passive periphrastic, 63, 86

negative commands, 111

passive voice, 35, 39

passive, 55

and deponent verbs, 63±64

primary sequence in, 122

future imperative, 49

perfect system (of verb conjugation)

future indicative, 44

active, 52±54

future infinitives, 60

passive, 54±58

future participles, 62, 63

perfect tense, 37

future perfect indicative, 55

periphrastics

imperfect indicative, 42

active, 63

204

INDEX

periphrastics (continued)

present imperfect indicative

formation of, 62±63

active, 41±42

passive, 63

passive, 42

permission, verbs expressing, 168

present imperfect subjunctive

person, 35, 39

active, 47

personal agent, ablative of (by), 92

passive, 47

personal pronouns, 27±28

present indicative, 68±70

place

active, 39

where (in), 92

irregular, 67±68

to which, 88±89

passive, 39±40, 63, 65±66

from which (from), 91±92

present infinitives

pluperfect indicative

active, 59, 64

active, 52

passive, 59, 64±66

passive, 55

present participles, 68, 69, 117±118

pluperfect subjunctive

active, 61, 62

active, 53, 59

passive, 61

passive, 56

present stem verbs, 38±39, 43

secondary sequence in, 123

present subjunctive, 69, 70

wishes, 113

active, 45±46

pluperfect tense, 37, 70

commands, 114

plural (see number)

irregular, 67±68

positive adjectives, 24

negative commands, 111

positive adverbs, 74

passive, 46

possession

primary sequence in, 122

dative case, 85

wishes, 113

genitive case, 80

present system (of verb conjugation),

possessive adjectives, 28±29
38±51

possessive genitive, 80

present tense, 37

potential subjunctive, 113

prevention, clauses of, 130

predicate, 2, 80

primary sequence of tenses, 122, 163

ablative absolutes, 146

principal parts (verbs), 37±38

adjectives, 99

pronouns, 27±32

dativē, 85
as adjectives, 29
definition of, 2
definition of, 27
genitive, 81
demonstrative, 29±31
nominative, 79±80
indefinite, 32±33
predicate dative, 85
interrogative, 31±32
predicate genitive, 81
personal, 27±28
predicate nominatives, 79±80
re-exive, 28±29
prexes, 32, 85±86
relative, 31
prepositions, 74±77
pronunciation, xiii±xv
with ablative and accusative cases, 76±77
accentuation, xiv±xv
ablative with, 94±95
of consonants, xiii
with accusative case, 3, 75±77, 89
of diphthongs, xiv
accusative with, 89
of Latin words, xiv±xv
definition of, 74
of vowels, xiv
present contrary-to-fact conditions, 136, 145
protasis, 135, 144, 162, 163

present imperative

proviso, clauses of, 131

active, 48

purpose, relative clauses of, 140±141

passive, 48±49

purpose clauses (complex sentences),

uses of, 48

128±129

INDEX

205

quantity, adjectives denoting, 99

in@nitives, 171±172

questions

participles, 144±145

deliberative, 113

purpose clauses, 128±129

indirect, 153±158

relative clauses in indirect statement, 159±162

relative clauses with subjunctive, 140±144

result clauses, 129

re⁻exive pronouns, 28±29

sequence of tenses, 122±123

relative clauses, 31

subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 158±

of cause, 141

159

of characteristic, 140

supine, 173±174

in indirect statement, 159±162

syntax of, 121±175

of purpose, 140±141
temporal clauses, 123±124
of result, 141
conditional, 135±140
simple sentences, 119±120
direct object, 88
with subjunctive, 140±144
indirect object, 84±85
relative pronouns, 31
in@nitive as subject of, 171
relative time
simple, 105±120
in ablative absolutes, 146
imperative mood, 110±112
in@nitives in indirect statement, 149±150
as independent clauses, 105
participles, 117±118
indicative mood, 106±110
subjunctives in subordinate clauses, 122±123
participles, 117±119
respect, ablative of, 94
relative clauses, 119±120
result, relative clauses of, 141
subjunctive mood, 113±117
result clauses (complex sentences), 129
subject of, 79, 171
separation, ablative of (from), 91±93
second-conjugation verbs, 38, 43, 44
sequence of tenses
second declension

in complex sentences, 122±123
of adjectives, 17±19, 25±26, 28
primary, 122
of nouns, 7±9
secondary, 122
second person, 35
simple conditions, 135
secondary sequence of tenses, 122, 163±164
simple sentences, 105±120
semi-deponent verbs, 66
imperative mood, 110±112
sentences
as independent clauses, 105
complex
indicative mood, 106±110
ablative absolute, 145±148
negative commands, 110±112
causal clauses, 124±125
participles, 117±119
clauses of doubting, 130
relative clauses, 119±120
clauses of prevention, 130
subjunctive mood, 113±117
clauses of proviso, 131
deliberative, 113
concessive clauses, 125±128
hortatory, 114
conditional sentences, 135±140
jussive, 114
conditional sentences in indirect statement,

optative, 113
162±165

potential, 113
de®nition of, 121
syntax of, 105±120
fear clauses, 130
space, extent of, 88
fore ut clause, 165±167
statement, indirect. see indirect statement

gerund/gerundive, 172±173
stem, 5

impersonal verbs, 167±172
i-stem, 9±12, 44
indirect commands, 129
non-i-stem, 9, 43
indirect question, 153±158
perfect, 52±54
indirect statement, 148±153
present, 38±39, 43±47, 61
206

INDEX

subject, 79
in indirect statement, 158±159
case of, 2
sequence of tenses, 122
in indirect statement, 149
subordinating conjunctions, 121±122
in®nitives as, 171
mood of, 121±122
nominative case, 79

temporal, 123±124

subject accusative construction, 149

substantive adjectives, 100

subjective genitive, 81

substantive result clauses, 129

subjunctive mood, 36

superlative degree

deliberative, 113

adjectives, 25±26, 100±101

hortatory, 114

adverbs, 74

imperfect, 65±66

genitive case, 80

active, 47

partitive genitive with, 80

passive, 47

supines

secondary sequence in, 123

formation of, 60

wishes, 113

uses of, 173±174

independent uses, 113±117

syncopation, 53±54

jussive, 114

syntax

optative, 113

of adjectives, 99±103

perfect

adverbial use of, 100

active, 53

comparative, 100±101
negative commands, 111
predicate, 99
passive, 55
substantive, 100
primary sequence in, 122
superlative, 100±101
pluperfect
of complex sentences, 121±175
active, 53
ablative absolute, 145±148
passive, 56
causal clauses, 124±125
secondary sequence in, 123
clauses of doubting, 130
wishes, 113
clauses of prevention, 130
potential, 113
clauses of proviso, 131
present, 69, 70
concessive clauses, 125±128
active, 45±46
conditional sentences, 135±140
commands, 114
conditional sentences in indirect statement,
negative commands, 111
162±165
passive, 46
fear clauses, 130
primary sequence in, 122

fore ut clause, 165±167

wishes, 113

gerund/gerundive, 172±173

relative clauses with, 140±144

impersonal verbs, 167±172

sequence of tenses, 121±122

indirect commands, 129

simple sentences, 113±117

indirect question, 153±158

deliberative, 113

indirect statement, 148±153

hortatory, 114

in@nitives, 171±172

jussive, 114

participles, 144±145

optative, 113

purpose clauses, 128±129

potential, 113

relative clauses in indirect statement, 159±162

subordinate uses, 121±123

relative clauses with subjunctive, 140±144

tenses of, 37

result clauses, 129

verbs, 36

sequence of tenses, 122±123

subordinate clauses, 121

subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 158±

ablative word combinations as, 94

159

in conditional sentences, 135

supine, 173±174

INDEX

207

temporal clauses, 123±124

uncompleted action, 36±37

of nouns

ablative case, 91±97

accusative case, 88±91

verbal adjectives

dative case, 84±87

gerundive as, 172

genitive case, 80±84

participles as, 61, 117

locative case, 97

verbal nouns, 59±61

nominative case, 79±80

gerund as, 60±61, 172

of simple sentences, 105±120

in@nitives, 59±60

imperative mood, 110±112

in@nitives as, 171±172

indicative mood, 106±110

supine, 60, 173±174

participles, 117±119

verbs, 35±71

relative clauses, 119±120

active voice, 35, 39

subjunctive mood, 113±117

conjugation of, 37±39

perfect system, 52±58

present system, 38±51

dative with compound, 85±86

dative with intransitive, 86

temporal clauses, 121, 123±124

defective, 70

tenses

deponent, 63±66

in conditional sentences, 162±165

1st conjugation, 38

future, 37

fourth conjugation, 38

future perfect, 37

future indicative, 68

imperfect, 37

future perfect tense, 37

in indirect questions, 153±154

future tense, 37

of infinitives, 149±150

genitive with, 82±84

of participles, 117±118

imperative, 69±70

perfect, 37

imperative mood of, 36

pluperfect, 37

imperfect indicative, 68

present, 37

imperfect tense, 37

sequences of, 122±123

impersonal, 66, 167±172

of verbs, 36±37

in complex sentences, 167±172

(See also specific tenses)

of emotional distress, 167±168

third-conjugation verbs, 38±40, 43, 44

and expressions of permission/necessity,

third declension

168

of adjectives, 19±23, 61, 73

of interest, 168±170

of nouns, 9±12

of independent clauses, 113

third person, 35

indicative mood of, 36

three-termination adjectives, 19±20

in indirect statement, 149

time

irregular, 67±68

ablative of when or within which (in), 92

mood of, 36

accusative of extent of, 88

number of, 35

relative

participles as, 117

in ablative absolutes, 146

passive voice, 35, 39

in infinitives in indirect statement, 149±150

past tense, 37

participles, 117±118

person of, 35

subjunctives in subordinate clauses, 122±123

pluperfect tense, 37

of verb tenses, 36±37

present indicative, 68, 69

(See also temporal clauses)

present participle, 68, 69

two-termination adjectives, 20±21, 24

present subjunctive, 69

208

INDEX

verbs (continued)

passive, 35, 39

present tense, 37

vocative case, 4

principal parts of, 37±38, 166

voice

second conjugation, 38

active, 35, 39

semi-deponent, 66

passive, 35, 39

subjunctive mood of, 36

vowels, xiv

tense, 36±37

third conjugation, 39, 40n.2

voice, 35

active, 35, 39

word order, 105±106

Document Outline

- Copyright
- CONTENTS
- PREFACE
- Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation
 - Alphabet
 - CONSONANTS
 - VOWELS
 - DIPHTHONGS
 - Pronunciation of Lat in Words
- CHAPTER 1: The Noun
 - The Nominative Case
 - The Genitive Case
 - The Dative Case
 - The Accusative Case
 - The Ablative Case
 - The Vocative Case
 - Declension
 - THE FIRST DECLENSION
 - THE SECOND DECLENSION
 - THE THIRD DECLENSION
 - THE FOURTH DECLENSION
 - THE FIFTH DECLENSION
 - A Few Irregular Nouns
- CHAPTER 2: The Adjective
 - First-Second-Declension Adjectives
 - Third-Declension Adjectives
 - THIRD-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES
 - TWO-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES
 - ONE-TERMINATION ADJECTIVES
 - Adjectives with the Genitive Singular in -ius
 - Comparison of Adjectives
 - THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE
 - THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE
- CHAPTER 3: Pronouns and Adjectives
 - Personal Pronouns
 - Reflexive Pronouns
 - Possessive Adjectives
 - Demonstratives
 - Relatives
 - Interrogatives
 - Indefinites
- CHAPTER 4: The Verb
 - Person and Number
 - Voice
 - Mood
 - INDICATIVE
 - SUBJUNCTIVE
 - IMPERATIVE
 - Tense
 - Conjugations
 - Present System
 - PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

- PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE
 - IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE
 - IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE
 - FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE
 - FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE
 - PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE
 - PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE
 - IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE
 - IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE
 - PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE
 - PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE
 - FUTURE IMPERATIVE ACTIVE
- Perfect System
 - PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM
 - PERFECT PASSIVE SYSTEM
- Verbal Nouns
 - INFINITIVES
 - SUPINE
 - GERUND
- Participles
 - PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE
 - PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
 - FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
 - FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE
 - PERIPHRASTICS
- Deponent Verbs
 - PARTICIPLES
 - IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE
- Semi-Deponent Verbs
- Impersonal Verbs
- Some Irregular Verbs
 - PRESENT PARTICIPLE
 - PRESENT INDICATIVE
 - IMPERFECT INDICATIVE
 - FUTURE INDICATIVE
 - PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
 - PRESENT PARTICIPLE
 - PRESENT INDICATIVE
 - IMPERATIVE
- CHAPTER 5: Adverbs and Prepositions
 - Adverbs
 - Prepositions
 - COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE CASE
 - COMMON PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE CASE
 - PREPOSITIONS THAT TAKE BOTH ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES
- CHAPTER 6: Syntax of the Noun
 - Nominative Case
 - SUBJECT
 - PREDICATE NOMINATIVE
 - Genitive Case
 - POSSESSIVE GENITIVE
 - PARTITIVE GENITIVE
 - OBJECTIVE GENITIVE
 - SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE
 - GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC, OR PREDICATE GENITIVE
 - GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

- GENITIVE OF INDEFINATE VALUE
 - GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS
 - Dative Case
 - INDIRECT OBJECT
 - DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR
 - PREDICATE DATIVE
 - DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS
 - DATIVE WITH CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS
 - DATIVE OF AGENT
 - Accusative Case
 - DIRECT OBJECT
 - SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE OF AN INFINITIVE
 - ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF TIME OR SPACE
 - ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE
 - ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH
 - ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS
 - ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION
 - Ablative Case
 - ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH (FROM)
 - ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE (IN)
 - ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH (IN)
 - ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT (BY)
 - ABLATIVE OF CAUSE (FROM)
 - ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT (BY)
 - ABLATIVE OF MANNER (WITH)
 - ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION (FROM)
 - ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON FROM)
 - ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE (BY)
 - ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION (WITH)
 - ABLATIVE OF RESPECT
 - ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE
 - ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS
 - Locative Case
- CHAPTER 7: Syntax of the Adjective
 - Predicate Adjective
 - Substantive Adjective
 - Adverbial Use of the Adjective
 - Comparative and Superlative Adjectives
- CHAPTER 8: Syntax of the Simple Sentence
 - Indicative Mood
 - Imperative Mood
 - NEGATIVE COMMANDS
 - Subjunctive Mood: Independent Uses
 - POTENTIAL
 - DELIBERATIVE
 - OPTATIVE
 - HORTATORY OR JUSSIVE
 - Participles
 - Relative Clauses
- CHAPTER 9: Syntax of the Complex Sentence
 - Sequence of Tenses
 - RELATIVE TIME
 - Temporal Clauses
 - Causal Clauses
 - Concessive Clauses
 - Purpose Clauses

- Indirect Commands
- Result Clauses
- Fear Clauses
- Clauses of Prevention
- Clauses of Doubting
- Clauses of Proviso
- Conditional Sentences
 - SIMPLE CONDITIONS
 - FUTURE CONDITIONS
 - CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS
- Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive
 - RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTICS
 - RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE
 - RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT
 - RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CAUSE
- Participles Revisited
- Ablative Absolute
- Indirect Statement
- Indirect Question
- Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement
- Relative Clauses in Indirect Statement
- Conditional Sentences in Indirect Statement
- "Fore ut" Clause
- Impersonal Verbs
 - VERBS OF EMOTIONAL DISTRESS
 - VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS OF PERMISSION AND NECESSITY
 - VERBS OF INTEREST
- The Infinitive
- Gerund and Gerundive
- Supine
- Answers to Exercises
- INDEX

Table of Contents

[Preface](#)

[Introduction to the Latin Alphabet and](#)

[Vowels](#)

[CHAPTER 1](#)

[The Nominative Case](#)

[The Dative Case](#)

[The Vocative Case](#)

[The Second Declension](#)

[The Third Declension](#)

[The Fourth Declension](#)

[The Fifth Declension](#)

[A Few Irregular Nouns](#)

[CHAPTER 2](#)

[Third-Declension Adjectives](#)

[Two-Termination Adjectives](#)

[One-Termination Adjectives](#)

[Adjectives with the Genitive Singular in -ō](#)

[Copyright 2002 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. Click Here for Terms of Use.](#)

[Comparison of Adjectives](#)

[The Superlative Degree](#)

[CHAPTER 3](#)

[Re-exive Pronouns](#)

[Demonstratives](#)

[Relatives](#)

[Indefinites](#)

[CHAPTER 4](#)

[Mood](#)

[Conjugations](#)

[Present System](#)

[Present Indicative Active](#)

[Imperfect Indicative Active](#)

[Imperfect Indicative Passive](#)

[Future Indicative Active](#)

[Future Indicative Passive](#)

[Present Subjunctive Active](#)

[Present Subjunctive Passive](#)

[Imperfect Subjunctive Active](#)

[Present Imperative Active](#)

[Future Imperative Active](#)

[Perfect System](#)

[Perfect Passive System](#)

[Verbal Nouns](#)

[Supine](#)

[Participles](#)

[Perfect Passive Participle](#)

[Deponent Verbs](#)

64

[Imperfect Subjunctive](#)

[Semi-Deponent Verbs](#)

[Some Irregular Verbs](#)